

Magento User Guide



The *Magento User Guide* is here to help you through the process of setting up your store. The User Guide begins with an introduction to installing and configuring the basic settings for your store, and then walks through the steps to configure more advanced settings, setting up your payment modules, creating and editing categories and products and much more.

If you have a specific question on an element within Magento you can skip to the chapter within the User Guide using the table of contents to the right. If you are just getting started it is best to go through the User Guide chapter by chapter to walk you through the process of configuring your store.

This User Guide is a Wiki, and as such, you should feel free to edit and add elements as you see fit.

Text from: http://www.magentocommerce.com/support/magento_user_guide

PDF Created by: Florian BARLETTA

Original source: http://barletf.e-supinfo.net/docs/Magento_User_Guide_in_PDF.pdf

CONTENT

CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCING MAGENTO	9
WHAT IS MAGENTO	9
ELEMENTS AND TERMINOLOGIES OF MAGENTO SITES	9
Websites and Stores	9
Websites	9
Stores	9
Store Views	10
MAGENTO'S ARCHITECTURE	11
Core	11
Local	11
Community	11
Extensions	12
Modules	12
Interface	13
Themes	13
Blocks	13
CHAPTER 2: GETTING STARTED WITH MAGENTO	15
SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS	15
DOWNLOADING MAGENTO	16
INSTALLING AND CONFIGURING MAGENTO	16
<i>Downloader Install</i>	16
Installation	16
<i>Default Install</i>	18
Installation	18
<i>Appendix: PHP5 CGI Setup</i>	19
Introduction	19
Requirements	19
Step 1: Upload the PHP5 CGI binary	19
Step 2: Modify the Magento .htaccess file	20
Troubleshooting	21
I still see "Invalid PHP version" when visiting my Magento page.	21
I see "Internal Server Error" when visiting my Magento page.	21
<i>Configuration during Installation</i>	21
<i>Troubleshooting Installation</i>	22
INTRODUCTION TO THE ADMINISTRATIVE PANEL	22
<i>Creating Multiple Websites and Stores</i>	22
Website	22
Store	22
Store View	23
<i>Permissions</i>	23
Creating Roles	23
Role Info	23
Role Resources	23
Role Users	24
Assigning Users	24
User Info	24
User Role	24
<i>Cache Management</i>	24

CHAPTER 3: SET UP YOUR CATALOG	25
OVERVIEW OF CATALOG CONCEPTS.....	25
CREATING AND MANAGING CATEGORIES.....	25
<i>Setting Up Defaults.....</i>	25
Frontend	25
Product Options	25
Product Alerts	26
Product Alerts Run Settings	26
Product Image Placeholders	26
Recently Viewed/Compared Products	27
Price	27
Search Engine Optimizations	27
Categories/Products/CMS Pages Options	28
Generation Settings	28
<i>Creating Categories</i>	29
<i>Assigning products at the category level.....</i>	33
<i>Assigning designs at the category level.....</i>	33
<i>Using static blocks with categories</i>	35
ATTRIBUTES.....	36
<i>Creating an Attribute.....</i>	36
Properties	36
Attribute Properties	36
Frontend Properties	38
Manage Label / Options.....	40
<i>Managing Attribute Sets</i>	41
Creating an Attribute Set	41
Assigning Attribute Sets to Products.....	43
PRODUCTS	44
<i>Setting up configuration and Attributes</i>	46
<i>Creating a Simple Product</i>	46
General	47
Prices.....	49
Meta Information.....	50
Images.....	51
Design	52
Inventory.....	53
Websites	53
Categories	53
Related Products/Up-sells/Cross-Sells.....	54
Product Alerts	54
Custom Attributes.....	55
Product Reviews.....	55
Product Tags	56
Customers Tagged Product	56
<i>Creating a Configurable Product</i>	56
Weight.....	58
Inventory.....	58
Associated Products.....	58
<i>Creating a Grouped Product</i>	61
Weight.....	62
Prices.....	62
Inventory.....	62
Associated Products.....	62

<i>Related Products, Up-sells, Cross-sells.....</i>	63
<i>Product Comparisons.....</i>	66
<i>Layered Navigation</i>	67
<i>Assigning Designs at the product level.....</i>	69
STOCK MANAGEMENT.....	70
<i>Creating stock management default options</i>	70
<i>Creating stock management on the product level</i>	71
BATCH UPDATES.....	73
URL REWRITES	75
<i>Configuration Settings.....</i>	75
<i>Editing URL Rewrites</i>	76
<i>Creating URL Rewrites</i>	77
CHAPTER 4: GET READY FOR SELLING	79
CHECKOUT PROCESS.....	79
LOCALIZATION SETTINGS	85
<i>Locale Settings.....</i>	85
Countries options.....	85
Locale options.....	86
<i>Currency.....</i>	86
Currency Configuration.....	86
Currencies Options.....	86
Import Settings	87
Currency Rates.....	88
TAXES.....	89
<i>Tax Rates</i>	90
<i>Tax Classes.....</i>	91
Customer Tax Classes.....	91
Product Tax Classes.....	92
<i>Tax Rules.....</i>	93
SHIPPING OPTIONS	94
<i>Shipping Settings</i>	94
Origin	94
Options.....	94
<i>Shipping Methods.....</i>	96
Flat Rate	96
Table Rates.....	98
Free Shipping	100
UPS.....	101
USPS.....	104
FedEx.....	105
DHL.....	106
ACCEPTING MONEY	108
<i>Payment Methods and PayPal Accounts</i>	108
Saved CC	108
Setup	109
Functionality on Front-End and Back-End.....	110
Zero Subtotal Checkout	111
Setup	111
Functionality on Front-End and Back-End.....	112
Check/Money Order	112
Setup	112

Functionality on Front-End and Back-End.....	113
Purchase Order	113
Setup.....	113
Functionality on Front-End and Back-End.....	114
Authorize.net	114
Setup.....	114
Functionality on Front-End and Back-End.....	116
PayflowPro.....	116
Setup.....	116
Functionality on Front-End and Back-End.....	118
PayPal Express.....	118
Setup.....	118
Functionality on Front-End and Back-End.....	119
PayPal Direct.....	120
Setup.....	120
Functionality on Front-End and Back-End.....	121
PayPal Standard	121
Setup.....	121
Functionality on Front-End and Back-End.....	122
PayPal UK Express	123
Setup.....	123
Functionality on Front-End and Back-End.....	124
PayPal UK Direct	124
Setup.....	124
Functionality on Front-End and Back-End.....	125
<i>Google Checkout</i>	126
Setup.....	126
Integrating Magento using Google Checkout seller account	126
Setting up Google Checkout configuration in Magento	127
Functionality on Front-End and Back-End.....	130
Customer Checkout with Google Checkout	130
Handling completed orders in Google Checkout	131
CHAPTER 5: PROMOTIONS, MARKETING AND CONTENT PAGES.....	133
CUSTOMER PERSONALIZATION	133
<i>Wishlist</i>	133
<i>Compare Products</i>	134
<i>Recently Viewed/Compared Products</i>	136
<i>New Products</i>	137
<i>RSS Feeds</i>	138
TIER PRICING	139
CATALOG PRICE RULES	141
<i>Rule Information</i>	142
<i>Conditions</i>	142
<i>Actions</i>	144
SHOPPING CART PRICE RULES	145
<i>Rule Information</i>	145
<i>Conditions</i>	146
<i>Actions</i>	147
NEWSLETTERS.....	148
<i>Newsletter Configuration</i>	148
<i>Newsletter Templates</i>	149
<i>Newsletter Queue</i>	150

<i>Newsletter Subscribers</i>	150
<i>Newsletter Problem Reports</i>	151
STATIC BLOCKS.....	151
LANDING PAGES	154
<i>General Information</i>	155
<i>Custom Design</i>	156
<i>Meta Data</i>	156
POLLS.....	158
<i>Poll Information</i>	158
<i>Poll Answers</i>	159
SEARCH SYNONYMS AND RE-DIRECTS	160
<i>Quick Search</i>	160
What the In-Store Search looks for.....	160
Saving a Search Term	161
From the Store.....	161
From the Admin:	161
Editing Search Terms	161
Advanced Search	163
CHAPTER 6: CUSTOMERS.....	165
DEFAULT CUSTOMER OPTIONS	165
Account Sharing Options.....	165
Create New Account Options.....	165
Password Options	165
CONTACT OPTIONS AND EMAILS.....	166
<i>Editing Email Templates</i>	166
<i>Email Sender</i>	167
<i>Contact Us</i>	168
CREATING CUSTOMERS	168
<i>In Front-end</i>	168
Log In	168
Checkout.....	169
<i>In Admin</i>	170
Account Information.....	170
Addresses.....	170
CUSTOMER GROUPS.....	171
<i>Creating Customer Groups</i>	171
<i>Managing Customer Groups</i>	172
Assigning Customers to Customer Groups.....	172
Using Customer Groups as filters.....	172
BATCH UPDATES TO CUSTOMERS	173
<i>Front-End</i>	173
My Account.....	173
Account Dashboard.....	174
Address Book	175
Account Information	175
My Orders	175
My Product Reviews	175
Newsletter Subscription.....	175
My Wishlist	175
Checkout with Multiple Addresses	175
<i>Back-End</i>	176

Customer View.....	176
Account Information	176
Addresses.....	176
Orders	177
Shopping Cart.....	177
Wishlist	177
Newsletter	177
Product Reviews.....	177
Product Tags	177
CHAPTER 7: REPORTS AND ANALYTICS	179
REPORTS.....	179
<i>Sales.....</i>	<i>179</i>
Sales Report	179
Tax Report.....	179
Shipping Report	180
Total invoiced.....	180
Total refunded	180
Coupons Report	180
<i>Shopping Cart Report</i>	<i>181</i>
Products in carts	181
Abandoned carts.....	181
<i>Products.....</i>	<i>181</i>
Bestsellers.....	181
Most Viewed.....	181
Low stock	181
<i>Customers.....</i>	<i>182</i>
New Accounts	182
Customers by orders total	182
Customers by number of orders	182
<i>Review Reports</i>	<i>183</i>
Customers Reviews.....	183
Products Reviews.....	183
<i>Tags Reports</i>	<i>183</i>
Customer	183
Products.....	183
Popular.....	183
<i>Search Terms</i>	<i>183</i>
DASHBOARD.....	184
ANALYTICS	185
CHAPTER 8: MANAGING ORDERS	186
OVERVIEW OF ORDER FUNCTIONALITY	186
<i>Creating Orders</i>	<i>186</i>
<i>Terminology.....</i>	<i>186</i>
Sales Order.....	186
Invoice.....	186
Shipment.....	186
Credit Memo.....	186
<i>Managing and Editing Orders</i>	<i>187</i>
CREATING ORDERS.....	187
<i>Accessing the Order Page</i>	<i>187</i>
From the Orders page.....	187

From the Customers page.....	188
<i>Creating the Order.....</i>	<i>188</i>
SALES ORDER OPTIONS.....	191
<i>Invoice Options</i>	<i>191</i>
Create New	191
Completed Invoices	193
<i>Shipment Options.....</i>	<i>194</i>
Create New	194
Completed Shipments.....	195
<i>Credit Memo Options</i>	<i>196</i>
Create New	196
Completed Credit Memos.....	198
MANAGING AND EDITING ORDERS.....	199
CHAPTER 9: USER-GENERATED CONTENT	202
RATINGS AND REVIEWS.....	202
<i>Managing Ratings</i>	<i>202</i>
Rating Title	202
Rating Visibility.....	202
<i>Managing Reviews</i>	<i>204</i>
Adding a new review from the admin.....	204
Editing and approving pending reviews.....	204
TAGS.....	206
EMAIL TO A FRIEND OPTIONS.....	208

Chapter 1: Introducing Magento

What is Magento

Magento is a new professional open-source eCommerce solution offering unprecedented flexibility and control. With Magento, never feel trapped in your eCommerce solution again.

Since it is open-source, Magento's code is available free for download. Just go to www.magentocommerce.com/download to download your copy today.

In this guide we will introduce key concepts and walk you through setting up your Magento store, from installing Magento, to entering products.

Elements and Terminologies of Magento Sites

Magento is made up of a few different elements which define the functionality, design and business logic of the site. In order to follow along with the User Guide it is crucial that you have a good grasp of the terminologies used to describe these elements of the Magento system. The terminologies introduced in this chapter are most likely new territory for you, so take your time and read through them thoroughly. But most importantly, don't be discouraged if you can't fully grasp the concept of all these new terminologies - This chapter merely serves to introduce them, and further chapters will dig deeper into, and expand upon, these simple definitions.

Websites and Stores

One of the most powerful features of Magento is the ability to manage multiple websites and stores from one back-end. This allows store owners to manage stores on different URLs, display the same products in different languages on the same URL, along with a variety of other setups. If you will only be selling your products from one URL in one language you will not need to use this functionality, but the ability to easily expand into additional languages makes Magento scalable as your business grows out of your home market.

Websites

A website is made up of one or more stores which share the same customer information, order information and shopping cart. This is a very broad term that can be adopted to define the unique needs of individual merchants.

Stores

Stores can be setup in a variety of ways, but remember that if they are part of the same website they will share certain information.

Store Views

Store Views are mainly used for different languages, so if you wanted to have a store displayed in English and Spanish, for example, you could create the store once and create two different store views for that store.

A few scenarios to define the different uses of website and store are as follows:

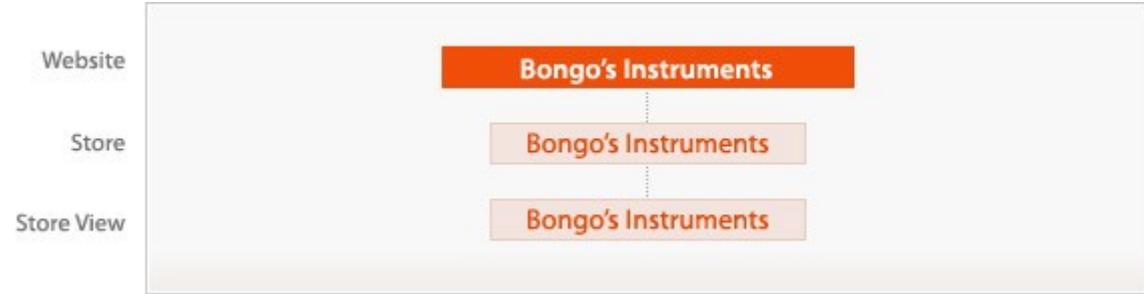
Scenario 1: One Website with multiple stores



Scenario 2: Two Stores with two store views each



Scenario 3: One Website with one store and one store view



The most common setup will be a one website and one store setup, but understanding the functionality of multiple websites and stores will help you understand why certain values are defined as global defaults and why others are only assigned on the website or store level.

Magento's Architecture

Magento is built on top of the Zend Framework, ensuring that the code base will be secure and scalable. The reasons for choosing the Zend Framework are many, but at a basic level the Zend Framework provides an object-oriented library of code with a committed company standing behind it.

Using this framework, Magento was built with 3 central tenets in mind.

1. Flexibility: We believe each solution should be as unique as the business behind it. Magento's code allows for seamless customizations.
2. Upgradeable: By separating the core code from community and local customizations, Magento can be easily customized without losing the ability to upgrade.
3. Speed and Security: The coding standards used by the developers follow best practices to maximize the efficiency of the software and provide a secure online storefront.

In this chapter we will introduce key concepts and terminologies of Magento. Even if you won't be developing or designing for Magento these concepts and terminologies will help as you set up your own online store.

Core

The core of Magento contains all the functionality included in the downloaded version. The core code is a collection of modules developed or certified by the Magento core development team. Editing core files is not recommended and will disable the ability to upgrade Magento in the future.

Local

Local extensions are customizations of Magento which reside only on a user's local copy. These extensions will be placed in a local folder, so that they do not interfere with upgrades to the core code, and in order to differentiate them from community contributions. There are different types of extensions, which we will get into in a moment, but they will all reside in the same directory.

Local extensions function just as core code does, only the directory is different.

Community

Community contributions are just that, and when downloaded will reside in the community folder. Just like local extensions, by keeping them separate from the core code Magento store owners are able to enjoy the additional functionality without compromising the ability to upgrade to future Magento versions.

Extensions

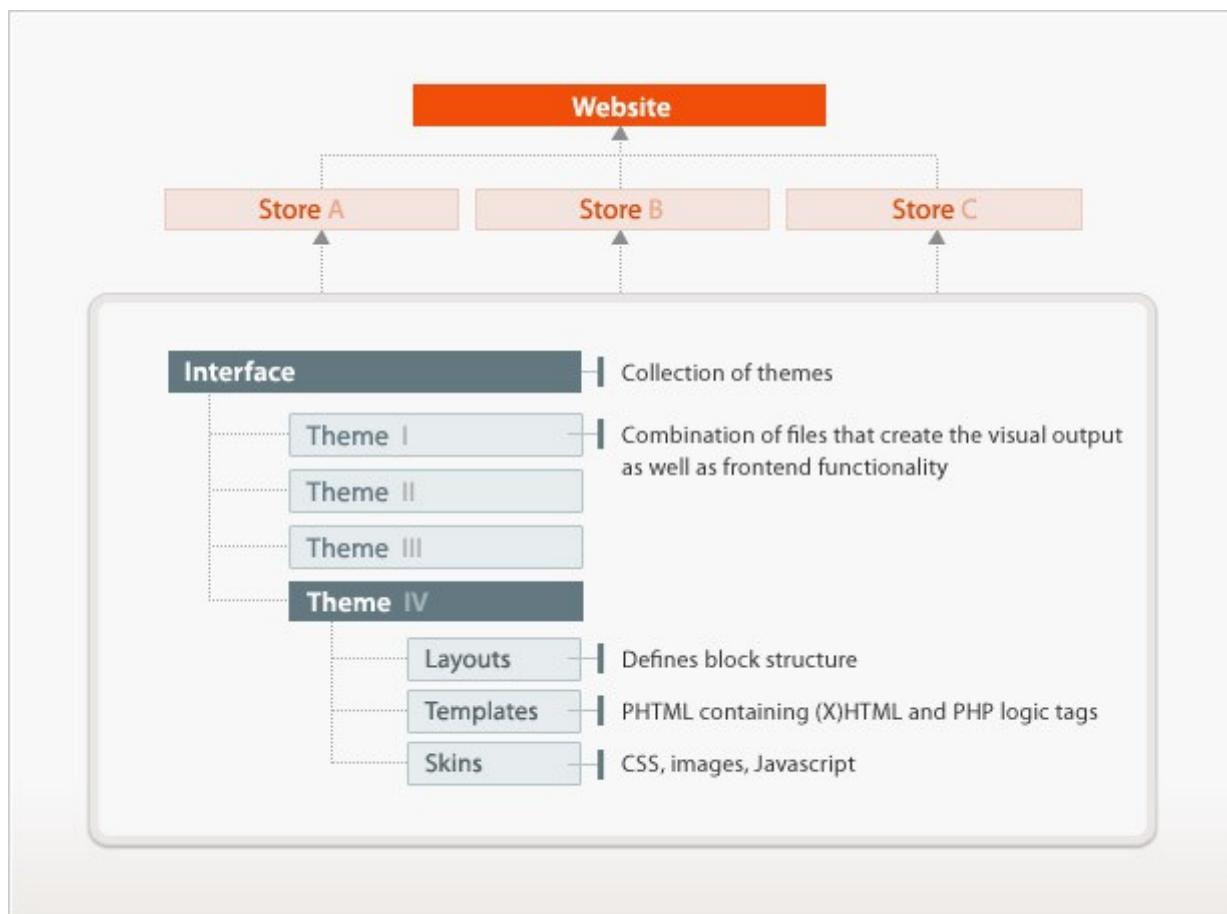
In short, extensions are exactly what they sound like. One or more files packaged together to extend the functionality of Magento. Strict terms and conditions prohibit extensions from modifying the core code, ensuring that any extended functionality doesn't prohibit you from upgrading when a new version of Magento is released.

Extensions can be installed from the admin panel, or downloaded from Magento Connect. These processes will both be covered later in the book, but let's look at the three types of extensions.

There are three types of extensions, and they will reside in one of the two locations described above. There are 3 main types of Extensions.

Modules

A module is an extension which extends the features and functionality of Magento. You are probably familiar with the idea of modules from other software, but if not, some concrete examples of modules would be additional payment gateway integrations, or a featured items promotional tool.



Interface

An interface is a collection of themes that determines the visual output and frontend functionalities of your store. An interface can be assigned on either the website-level, store-level or website and store level through the admin panel. We will cover assigning interfaces later in the book, for now let's take a look at the components of a theme.

Themes

A theme is any combination of layout, template and/or skin file(s) that create the visual experience of your store. Magento is built with the capacity to load multiple themes at once, and therefore distinguishes themes into two types:

- **Default Themes** - Every interface comes with a theme called 'default' which is the main theme of an interface. When you assign an interface to your store, the application automatically looks for this theme 'default' and loads it to the front-end. In order to customize your store design, you can either modify this theme, or create a non-default theme in addition and load it alongside the default. The default theme must contain all the required layouts, templates and skins to run a store error-free and hence is the lowest theme in the theme hierarchy.
- **Non-Default Themes** - A non-default theme can contain as many or as few theme files as you see fit for your needs. This type of theme is intended for creating temporary seasonal design changes to a store without having to create a whole new default theme—By creating a few images and updating some of the CSS, you can easily turn your store from a real bore to a stand-out seasonal Christmas store.

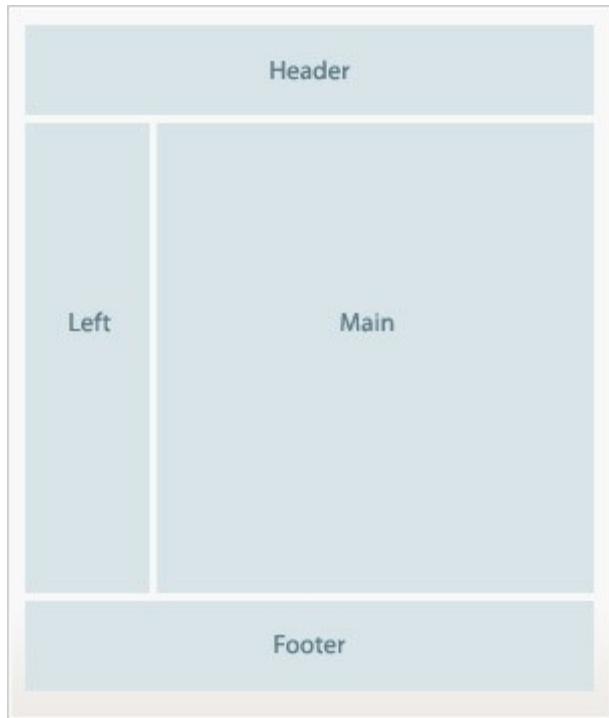
Lets take a look at the components of a theme:

- **Layouts** - Layouts are basic XML files that define the block structure for different pages, as well as controlling the META information and page encoding. Layout files are separated on a per-module basis, with every module bringing with it its own layout file.
- **Templates** - Templates are PHTML files that contain (X)HTML markups and any necessary PHP tags to create the logic for the visual presentation of information and features.
- **Skins** - Skins are block-specific Javascript and CSS and image files that compliment your (X)HTML. What are blocks you ask? Good question, and don't worry, we are almost done defining the components of Magento.

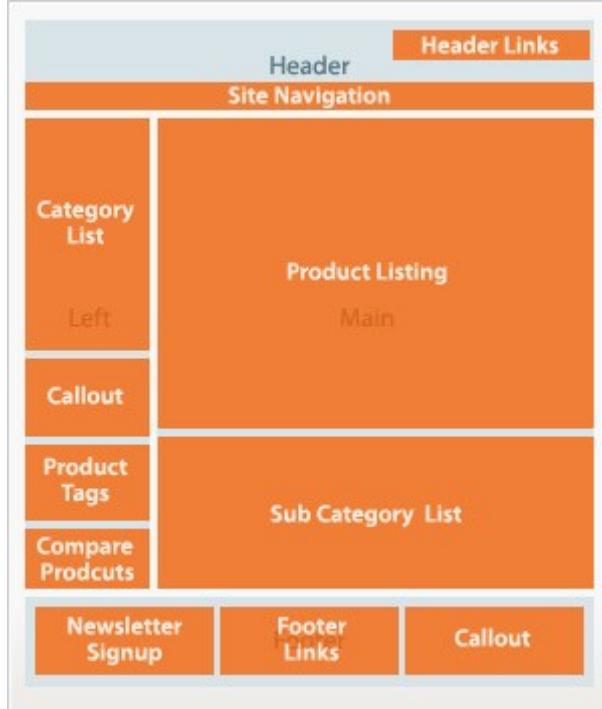
Blocks

Blocks are a way by which Magento distinguishes the array of functionalities in the system and creates a modular way to manage this array from both a visual and functional stand point. There are two types of blocks and they work together to create the visual output.

- **Structural Blocks** - These are blocks created for the sole purpose of assigning visual structure to a store page. Examples would be the header, left column, main column and footer.



- **Content Blocks** - These are blocks that produce the actual content inside each structural block. They are representations of each feature functionality in a page and employ template files to generate the (X)HTML to be inserted into its parent structural block. Examples are the category list, mini cart, product tags and product listing.



Unless you will be developing or designing for Magento you won't need to know any more than these terms. For those of you who will be developing or designing custom modules and interfaces, make sure to read Chapter 12: Designing and Developing for Magento. Of course we suggest you read the book through first, as the next few chapters are full of helpful information.

Chapter 2: Getting Started with Magento

Magento is developed to take full advantage of the newest technologies available, allowing your site the maximum flexibility without sacrificing speed. In this chapter we will look at the system requirements of Magento, how to download and install Magento on your server, and go through an introduction to the administration panel and key concepts when using the administration panel.

System Requirements

At the base level, Magento will require the following software.

- Linux, Windows, or another UNIX-compatible operating system
- Apache Web Server (1.x or 2.x)
- PHP 5.2.0 or newer, with the following extensions/addons:
 - PDO/MySQL
 - MySQLi
 - mcrypt
 - mhash
 - simplexml
 - DOM
 - curl
 - gd
- MySQL 4.1.20 or newer
- A Sendmail-compatible Mail Transfer Agent (MTA)
 - Magento will connect directly to an SMTP server if you don't have an MTA

We also recommend the use of APC as a bytecode cache for performance improvements. You can find it in the PECL archives here: <http://pecl.php.net/package/APC>. Other bytecode cache systems are not supported at this time.

If you are unsure if your hosting company supports these specifications, please check with them. You can also view these specifications at: magentocommerce.com/system-requirements. Once you have a hosting environment set up with support for these requirements you are able to download and install Magento to your server.

Downloading Magento

Magento is free to download. Simply go to magentocommerce.com/download and you will be able to download the software. Magento is available for download in two different versions. The installer version includes only the necessary files needed to begin the installation process and will be all that is necessary for most cases. If you are planning on installing multiple versions of Magento the full version will be more useful, as you will then only need to download the full version once, and will then be able to download the installer version for each new version. To keep it simple, if you are confused about which version to download, use the installer version.

Both versions are available in multiple formats to suit different needs. If you are unsure of which version to download use the .zip format.

Note: If you are a developer and are familiar with SVN you can also checkout the newest version of Magento using SVN. To view the most up to date command please visit magentocommerce.com/svn.

If you have successfully downloaded Magento you are now ready to install the software on your web server.

Installing and Configuring Magento

Downloader Install

This section covers the installer installation process for Magento. If you have downloaded the installer package from magentocommerce.com, then follow this guide to complete the installation.

Installation

1. Download the .zip or .tar.gz **installer** package from the Magento website and decompress it.
2. Upload all the decompressed files to your web server via FTP
3. Create a MySQL database and user/password for Magento
 - This step varies by hosting provider and is out of the scope of this document. Consult your provider's support/documentation for instructions on how to do this.
4. The top-level Magento directory (the one you uploaded the decompressed files to) must have the correct permissions in order for the installer to proceed. To do so, navigate to the directory with your FTP client. Then locate the function "Change Permissions" or "Change Mode" in your FTP client and select it. Once you find the

function, you must set the permissions so the web server can write to this file. There are two typical ways of representing file permissions in Linux:

- As a number (eg, 755)
- As a series of permissions categorized into *user*, *group*, and *other*

If your FTP client uses the first representation, set the permissions on the directory to be **777**, or **0777**. If your FTP client uses the second representation, set the permissions as shown in the image below.



5. If your server primarily runs PHP4 then you will require the **PHP5 CGI Binary** in order to continue. Please read the **PHP5 CGI Setup** appendix below and complete it before continuing to Step 6.

6. Now use your web browser to surf to the Magento installation wizard. If you've uploaded the Magento files to <http://www.example.com/magento/>, then the wizard will be located here: <http://www.example.com/magento/>.

7. Since you are using the installer version, the **downloader** will be the first installation process to run. It will attempt to download all the necessary components for a complete Magento install. If you notice a few "Warning" messages zip by on the green-on-black screen, don't worry too much about it. The installer will detect an overall success or failure, and if you see the "Continue Magento Installation" button at the end (usually takes about 5 minutes) then the process has succeeded. Click the "Continue Magento Installation" button to continue on to the regular installer wizard.

8. Once in the wizard, you can configure various system-level settings that are required for Magento to function. Most options will be intelligently guessed for you, but you're free to override any settings that don't look right. At the very least, change the database parameters in the first box, "Database connection", to match those of the database you set up in Step 3.

9. Success! You've completed a Magento installation. You can now visit the administration backend and begin configuring your new online store.

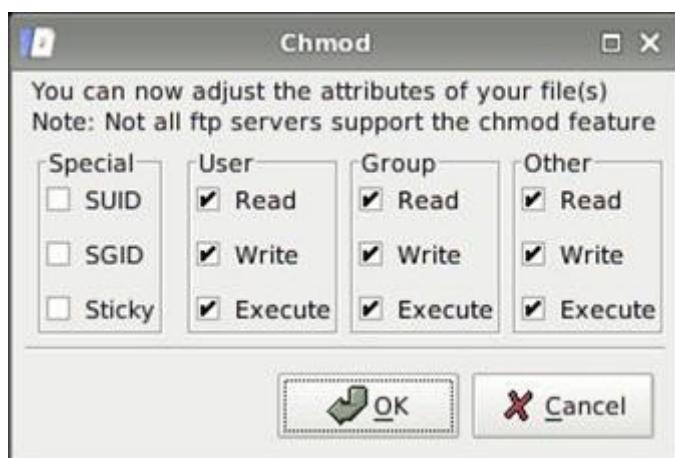
Default Install

This section covers the default installation process for Magento. If you have downloaded one of the standard release distributions from magentocommerce.com, follow this guide to complete the installation.

Installation

1. Download the .zip or .tar.gz file from the Magento website and decompress it.
2. Upload the Magento web files to your web server via FTP
3. Create a MySQL database and user/password for Magento
 - This step varies by hosting provider and is out of the scope of this document. Consult your provider's support/documentation for instructions on how to do this.
4. Ensure that the directories `app`, `etc`, `var`, and `media` are writable by the web server. To do so, navigate to the directory with your FTP client. Then locate the function "Change Permissions" or "Change Mode" in your FTP client and select it. Once you find the function, you must set the permissions so the web server can write to this file. There are two typical ways of representing file permissions in Linux:
 - As a number (eg, 755)
 - As a series of permissions categorized into *user*, *group*, and *other*

If your FTP client uses the first representation, set the permissions on each directory to be **777**, or **0777**. If your FTP client uses the second representation, set the permissions as shown in the image below.



5. If your server primarily runs PHP4 then you will require the **PHP5 CGI Binary** in order to continue. Please read the **PHP5 CGI Setup** appendix below and complete it before continuing to Step 6.

6. Now use your web browser to surf to the Magento installation wizard. If you've uploaded the Magento files to <http://www.example.com/magento/>, then the wizard will be located here: <http://www.example.com/magento/>.

7. Once in the wizard, you can configure various system-level settings that are required for Magento to function. Most options will be intelligently guessed for you, but you're free to override any settings that don't look right. At the very least, change the database parameters in the first box, "Database connection", to match those of the database you set up in Step 3.

8. Success! You've completed a Magento installation. You can now visit the administration backend and begin configuring your new online store.

Appendix: PHP5 CGI Setup

Introduction

Some hosting providers do not yet provide PHP5 on their servers, opting instead to stay with PHP4 for the time being. As Magento is a PHP5-only application, this can be a barrier for some users. This document outlines a possible workaround for such a scenario. The goal is to install PHP5 as a CGI binary and configure the web server (Apache) to use it instead of the default PHP4.

Requirements

Every hosting provider has a slightly different way of doing things, so it's important to know if this method will work with your provider before continuing. Below is a list of the basic requirements that this document requires. If you're unsure as to whether your provider supports these requirements, pass the list along to them and find out.

- Operating System: Linux
- Web Server: Apache with CGI support
- FileInfo override control via .htaccess files
- A user-writable cgi-bin directory
- FTP access to your web root and cgi-bin directories

Step 1: Upload the PHP5 CGI binary

It is possible to compile a PHP5 binary yourself, but for the purposes of this solution, we've provided one for you. You can download it here: <http://www.magentocommerce.com/support/php5cgi/php5-cgi>

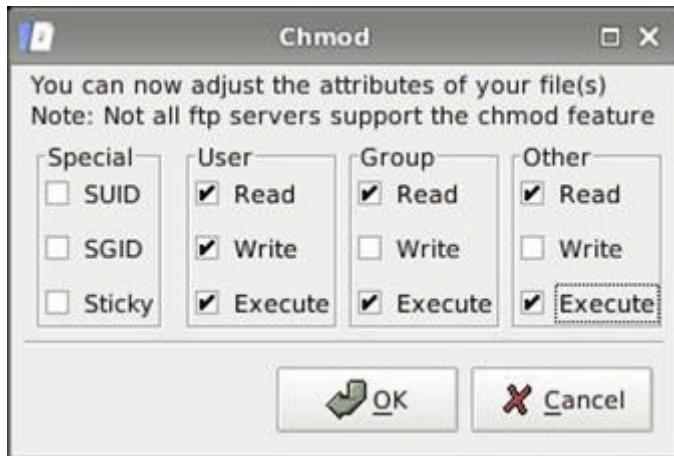
Once downloaded, use your FTP client to upload the file to your `cgi-bin` directory. If you don't know where your `cgi-bin` directory is, ask your hosting provider.

After uploading, use your FTP client to set the proper mode on the `php5-cgi` file. This function varies for each FTP client, but it usually called "Change Permissions" or "Change Mode" or "Chmod". Once you find the function,

you must set the permissions so the web server can run this file. There are two typical ways of representing file permissions in Linux:

1. As a number (eg, 755)
2. As a series of permissions categorized into user, group, and other

If your FTP client uses the first representation, set the permission on the [php5-cgi](#) binary to be **755**, or **0755**. If your FTP client uses the second representation, set the permissions as shown in the image below.



Step 2: Modify the Magento .htaccess file

By default, the web server will want to run the Magento application using PHP4, which will not work. In order to point it to the new PHP5 CGI binary, you must modify the [.htaccess](#) file in the Magento top-level directory.

Using your FTP client, edit the file [.htaccess](#) in your top-level magento directory.

The file is somewhat long so we won't list it all here. But the first few lines at the top should look like this:

```
#####
## uncomment these lines for CGI mode
## make sure to specify the correct cgi php binary file name
## it might be /cgi-bin/php-cgi

# Action php5-cgi /cgi-bin/php5-cgi
# AddHandler php5-cgi .php
# php_flag cgi.fix_pathinfo on
```

First, remove the **#** symbol from the beginning of the last three lines listed in the excerpt above. This will enable the special CGI handler for your Magento site. Next, you'll want to modify the path in the [Action](#) line to point to

the location of the `php5-cgi` binary you uploaded in Step 1. This path should be relative to the web root of your site.

That's it! You can now proceed with the rest of the Magento installation.

Troubleshooting

I still see “Invalid PHP version” when visiting my Magento page.

This probably means that your hosting provider does not allow the `FileInfo` overrides via `.htaccess` files. This is a necessary requirement for this solution, so you'll have to ask your hosting provider for it.

I see “Internal Server Error” when visiting my Magento page.

This is a typical error message when a CGI binary quits unexpectedly, and could be caused by a number of things. If you have access to your server's Apache error log, you can look there for some clues. We'll cover a few more common issues here.

1. **Bad location to the PHP5 binary.** Make sure the `AddHandler` directive in your `.htaccess` file is pointing to the correct location for the PHP5 binary. You can often test it by trying to surf to the location with your web browser. For example, if your site is www.example.com and your PHP5 location is `/cgi-bin/php5-cgi`, try visiting <http://www.example.com/cgi-bin/php5-cgi> with your web browser. If you see an “Internal Server Error” message, then that means your PHP5 binary is in the correct location. If you get a “File not found” message, then this is not the correct location.
2. **Bad permissions on the PHP5 binary.** Double check the permissions on the PHP5 CGI binary you uploaded in Step 1. They should be **755** or “**rwxr-xr-x**”, depending on your FTP client's representation.

Configuration during Installation

Once you select your option you will see the files downloaded. The time required to download the files will depend on your connection speed. Once the files have downloaded a success message will be displayed. Select OK and you will be taken to the next step of the installation where you will set the default configuration settings for your store.

The first settings you will need to enter will be your Database Connection settings. Your host will likely be your domain name, the database name, user name and user password will be the values you created when creating the database.

Troubleshooting Installation

If you have difficulty with installation you can receive help at the www.magentocommerce.com site in the forums.

Introduction to the Administrative Panel

Once you have completed the installation you will be taken to the frontend of your site. To access the administration panel you will add /admin to the end of the base url you specified during the installation. E.G. if you specified example.com as the base url, just go to <http://www.example.com/admin>. Once you are at the login section you will need to sign in using the user name and password you created during the installation process. Select the Login button and you are now in the administration panel.

The following sections detail some of the most important features which you will want to address in the initial configuration of your admin. Other features, such as adding products, payment methods, and shipping settings, will be addressed in following chapters.

Creating Multiple Websites and Stores

If you are interested in creating a multiple Website, Store, and/or Store View setup you can do so by navigating to System > Manage Stores.

Website

To create a new Website, click **Create Website** in the upper right corner.

Websites will each need to have a unique **Code**. This code can be a text name, but cannot have spaces or special characters within it.

If your Website name is New Website, a good rule of thumb would be to use “new” or “newwebsite” as your website code.

You can designate the **Sort order** of the Website as it will appear relative to your other Website(s) throughout the admin.

If you have not indicated which Website will be displayed when the index.php path is requested by the browser, your customers will automatically be directed to the default Website, which you select by checking the **Set as default** checkbox.

Store

To create a new Store, click **Create Store** in the upper right corner.

Select the Website to which this Store will be associated.

Select the Root Category which will be associated to this store. In your categories setup, you can create multiple Root Categories, each associated to different Stores. The sub-categories and products associated to those categories will only display in the Store to which the Root Category is associated. If you do not want to create different Root Categories to display in different Stores, you can select the same Root Category for all Stores. Categories are discussed in more detail in the [next chapter](#).

Store View

As explained in [Chapter 1](#), Store Views are best used to display a Store in multiple languages.

To create a new Store View, click **Create Store View** in the upper right corner.

Select the Store to which this Store View will be associated. The Code and Sort order fields work like those for Websites.

For a Store View to be visible on the front-end, it must be **Enabled**. You can remove it from the front-end without deleting it by selecting **Disabled**.

You can set unique Locales for each Store View. Simply navigate to System > Configuration, and select the General tab from the left column. In the **Current Configuration Scope** drop-down above, select the desired Store View. Uncheck the **Use website** checkbox next the Locale settings, and select the Locale you prefer. This Locale will only apply to this Store View.

Permissions

Magento's Permissions module is both flexible and intuitive. You can create predefined Roles, which have specific access to various parts of the admin. Then, you can create users and select which Role each user will possess. You can associate Users to Roles in both the Users page and the Roles page.

Creating Roles

To create a Role, navigate to System > Permissions > Roles and click **Add New Role**.

Role Info

Enter the **Role Name**.

Role Resources

Choose the Resources, or admin features, to which Users associated to this Role will have access. If you select **all** from the **Resource Access** drop-down, this Role will have access to all resources. If you select **Custom**, a resource tree will populate, and you will have to select the checkbox for each resource to which this Role will have access.

Click **Save Role**.

Role Users

Once a Role has been saved, this tab will appear. It will display all Users that are associated to this Role. To see a list of all Users, click **Reset Filter**. Click the checkbox of all Users you want to associate to this Role, and click Save Role again.

Assigning Users

To create a User, navigate to System > Permissions > Users and click **Add New User**.

User Info

Enter all the information for this User. The **User Name** and **Password** will be used by this User to log into the Magento admin panel. For a User to be able to access the admin panel, the User must be **Active**. You can prevent a User from accessing the admin panel without deleting their User account by changing this to **Inactive**.

User Role

Select the Role to which this User will be associated. This page will produce a list of all existing Roles, and you will only be allowed to choose one.

Click **Save User**.

Cache Management

Cache management can be accessed by navigating to System > Cache management. It can be enabled to improve the performance of Magento. When developing on Magento it is best to disable the cache management. You can enable caching on the entire site, or enable cache management on certain elements of the site by using the various checkboxes in this page.

Chapter 3: Set Up Your Catalog

Overview of Catalog Concepts

Now that you have your store installed and your initial configuration settings established, it's time to set up the heart of your site: the catalog. The catalog is the most important part of any eCommerce site, and with Magento, you will have complete control over it. So take advantage of this great opportunity!

Creating and Managing Categories

Setting Up Defaults

The first step to creating your catalog is to configure the catalog system settings. To do this, navigate to System > Configuration, and select the Catalog tab.

Frontend

This determines how your products will be shown in the front-end's catalog pages.

- **Products per Page** - Choose whether the category pages will display 9, 15, or 30 products by default. Your customers will be able to change this, or to display All products.
- **List Mode**
 - **Grid Only** - The products will display in a grid structure and your customers will not have the option to change this.
 - **List Only** - The products will display in a list structure and your customers will not have the option to change this.
 - **Grid (Default)/List** - The products will display in a grid structure by default but your customers will be able to switch to list.
 - **List (Default)/Grid** - The products will display in a list structure by default but your customers will be able to switch to grid.

Product Options

- **Default Tax Class** - Select whether the default tax class for new products added to your catalog will be Taxable Goods or not.

Product Alerts

There are two types of product alerts to which you can allow your customers to subscribe via email. Each have their own enable drop-down, and Email Template, but they share the same Email Sender. For more information on how to configure email templates and email sender addresses, refer to [Chapter 6: Customers](#). The Price Alert will create a link in every product page called **Sign up for price alert**. Clicking this link will subscribe your customer to this alert, and they will receive an email when the product price is changed. This includes adding or changing Special Prices in addition to the regular Price field. The Stock Alert will create a link in every Out of Stock product called **Sign up to get notified when this product is back in stock**. Clicking this link will subscribe your customer to this alert, and they will receive an email when the product status changes to In Stock. For each product, there is a tab listing all customers subscribed to either of these alerts. There is more information about this in the Products section [later in this chapter](#).

Product Alerts Run Settings

This determines the frequency with which Magento checks both product prices and stock status for changes, so that your subscribed customers can be alerted.

- **Frequency** - Designate whether you want Magento to check for updates Daily, Weekly, or Monthly.
- **Start Time** - Select the time of day (in 24 hour mode) at which you wish Magento to check for updates.
- **Error Email Recipient** - Enter the email address to which emails will be sent in case an error occurs during the check for updates.
- **Error Email Sender** - Select the address from which the error notification email will be sent.
- **Error Email Template** - Select the template which the error notification email will use.

Product Image Placeholders

This is discussed in more detail [later in this chapter](#), under Products.

Recently Viewed/Compared Products

This is discussed in more detail in [Chapter 5: Promotions, Marketing and Content Pages](#), under Customer Personalization.

Price

You can determine the level at which prices are shared in the **Catalog Price Scope** drop-down. If you select **Global**, prices will be shared across all websites. If you select **Website**, prices can differ between websites, although they will still be shared between store views contained in the same website. The price here affects several different areas in Magento. For example, this includes product prices, base currency, price filters in the admin, and catalog/shopping cart price rules.

Search Engine Optimizations

Configure these options to make your site more Search Engine Friendly.

- **Autogenerated site map** - If you Enable this feature, a **Site Map** link will display in the footer on the front-end, directing to an automatically generated site map including a list of all of your existing categories. In addition to the Autogenerated site map, Magento allows for integration with Google Sitemap. There is more information about this below.
- **Popular search terms** - If you Enable this feature, a **Search Terms** link will display in the footer on the front-end, directing to list of all search terms, displayed as a cloud. This is an SEO feature because each of these search terms counts as a link to your site, and is registered by search engines.



- **Page Title Separator** - Enter a character in this field, and it will be placed between the various Meta Information in the Page Title, that displays at the top of the browser.
- **Use categories path for product URLs** - This determines how the URL Rewrites autogenerate. If you choose Yes, the URL rewrite for products will include the associated category, and a separate rewrite will generate for each associated category. If you choose No, the URL Rewrites will include only the product name, and there will be only one rewrite, regardless of how many categories the product is associated to.
- **Product URL Suffix (cache refresh needed)** - This also affects how the URL rewrites autogenerate. The value entered into this field, for example .html, will automatically be added to the end of your URL rewrite generated for products. There is more about this topic in the section about [URL Rewrites](#).

If you want to configure Magento integration of Google Sitemap, navigate to System > Configuration and select Google Sitemap from the left column.

Categories/Products/CMS Pages Options

The sitemap settings for each of these three types of pages can be configured individually.

- **Frequency** - Designate how often you would like Google Sitemap to check each type of page for updates.
- **Priority** - Designate the priority that each page type receives in relation to the other page types when Google Sitemap updates.

Generation Settings

- **Enabled** - Select Yes to Enable Google Sitemap autogeneration and automatic updates.
- **Start Time** - Select the time of day (in 24 hour mode) at which you wish Google Sitemap to update.
- **Frequency** - Designate whether you want Google Sitemap to update Daily, Weekly, or Monthly. This can differ from the frequency that Google Sitemap actually checks for updates (as defined above).
- **Error Email Recipient** - Enter the email address to which emails will be sent in case an error occurs during the automatic update.

- **Error Email Sender** - Select the address from which the error notification email will be sent. For more information on how to configure these email addresses, refer to [Chapter 6: Customers](#).
- **Error Email Template** - Select the template which the error notification email will use. For more information on how to configure these templates, refer to [Chapter 6: Customers](#).

Creating Categories

To create and edit categories, navigate to Catalog > Manage Categories. In the center of the page you will have the option to create a new category.

1. Enter a name for the category. This is how it will appear on the front end of the sites selected.
2. Select the location in which the category will be created from the **Parent Category** drop-down. The default is **Root**, and any category created with this as its parent will be a **Root Catalog** level category (although the name of that category does not need to be Root Catalog). Having multiple Root Catalog level categories is useful if you want to use different category structures in different Stores. If you are not using a multiple Store structure, multiple Root Catalogs are unnecessary. Refer back to [Chapter 2](#) for more information about Stores and assigning Root Catalogs. Any category created with a Root Catalog level category as its parent category will be a top-level category in the navigation bar on the front end. If you wish, you can allow customers to subscribe to a list of all your top-level categories via RSS feeds. There is more information about RSS Feeds in [Chapter 5: Promotions, Marketing, and Content Pages](#). If an existing top-level category (i.e. not the Root Catalog) is selected as the parent category, the new category will be created as a sub-category of the selected top-level category, and will appear on the front-end in a drop-down menu when the top-level category is rolled over. If a category is created within a second-level category, the category menu will further expand, to the right, when the second-level category is rolled over, and so on.



Additionally, when a customer is browsing through your site, the category levels will display at the top of the page, below the navigation bar, in a “breadcrumb”. For example, if a customer rolls over the navigation bar, arrives at Apparel > Shoes > Mens and clicks Mens, they will be directed to the Mens category page. The breadcrumb will



look like: The current page will be in plain text, and all the parent categories will be links to the corresponding category pages. The same is true of product pages. In this case, the product name will be last in the breadcrumb, in plain text, and all categories will be linked. This is a dynamic feature, so that the breadcrumb will display the category pages according to the path by which your customer navigated to the product. If you have a product associated to multiple categories, the breadcrumb will detail only the specific path your customer chooses each time they arrive a product page. The breadcrumb improves usability by allowing customers to keep track of their location within your site at all times, with a clear path for how to return to previous pages.

3. Enter a **Description**. This is for internal use only, and will not appear on the front end.
4. Select an **Image** by clicking the **Browse...** button and locating the image on your computer. This image will appear on the front end of each category's page between the category name and content. Once a category has been saved with an image, a small icon of the existing image will appear to the left of the **Browse...** button, and a **Delete Image** checkbox will appear to the right.
5. Enter the meta information for the category in the **Page Title**, **Meta Keywords**, and **Meta Description** fields.
6. Display Mode and CMS Block refer to using static blocks with categories. For more information about this, refer to the [Using static blocks with categories](#) section below.

7. Select Yes or No from the **Is Anchor** drop-down. This drop-down has two effects.
 - Anchored categories will display all products associated to all child categories (and child of child, and child of child of child, etc.) on that category's page, along with the products associated directly to the parent category.
 - Anchored categories will display the filterable attributes of all products that display in the category page (meaning the products associated to that category and to its child categories) in the Layered Navigation menu in the left column. Layered Navigation is discussed in more detail [later in the chapter](#).
8. Select Yes or No from the **Is Active** drop-down. Select Yes for this category to be visible on the front end. If you select No, the category cannot be accessed from the navigation bar on the front end, nor can any of its sub-categories, and the category name will display as light gray in the category tree in the left column of the categories page in the admin.
9. The **URL key** adds a relative URL path which can be entered in place of the standard Target Path. It is Search Engine Friendly because it can use the name of the category instead of the ID#. For more information about URL Keys, refer to the section about [URL Rewrites](#). If you leave this field blank, it will automatically generate with the name of the category upon creation of the category. If you enter a value here manually, you cannot use spaces in this field.

In the left column will be a drop-down menu called **Choose Store View**. The default selection in the menu is **All Store Views**. When this is selected, you will be able to view the “default” options for each category. If you select a specific store view, you will be able to see the options specific to that store view for each category. Only certain options can vary between store views. Options that cannot vary, and will be the same in all store views, are called “global” and will have the label **[Global]** next to them. Those that can differ between Store Views will be labeled **[Store View]**. *Note: The products assigned to a category, accessed through the Category Products tab, are not global. This way, you can choose to have different products display in each store view.*

The screenshot shows the 'Categories' section of the Magento Admin. At the top, there's a 'Choose Store View:' dropdown set to 'All Store Views'. Below it is a large tree view of categories. The tree starts with 'Root Catalog (0)', which has several children: 'Furniture (7)' (with 'Living Room (4)' and 'Bedroom (3)'), 'Electronics (17)' (with 'Cell Phones (5)'), 'Cameras (8)' (with 'Accessories (3)' and 'Digital Cameras (5)'), 'Laptops (4)', 'Apparel (78)' (with 'Shirts (32)', 'Shoes (45)' (with 'Mens (22)' and 'Womens (33)'), 'Hoodies (1)'), and 'Pants (0)'. There's also a folder for 'Household Items (0)'. A vertical dotted line on the left indicates the tree structure.

Below this drop-down is the category tree, which lists all existing categories and displays their relationship to one another. For example, if one category is a sub-category of another, it will be listed directly below it, and indented one level. Next to each category name in the tree is a number inside parentheses. This number represents the amount of products associated directly to that category. Because the products are associated at the store level, the numbers in parentheses will vary depending upon which store view is selected from the drop-down. To edit any existing categories, select it from the category tree, and its options will appear in the center of the page, replacing the New Category section. When editing a category, the Parent Category drop-down will not be present. In order to move a category to a different Parent Category, simply drag and drop it directly in the category tree.

To return to the new category view, simply select a category from the tree and click the **Add New** button. This will automatically assign the selected category as the parent category in the drop-down.

Assigning products at the category level

Products can be added to a category while the category is being created, or anytime thereafter. Simply select the desired category, and access the **Category Products** tab (from the top of the category page). You will notice that the leftmost column in the grid contains a drop-down menu. The default selection will be Yes, meaning that the grid will only display items already associated to the category. Therefore, a brand new category will always have a blank product grid. In order to search for existing products to associate to this category, select either No (which will only display products that are not associated to the category) or Any (which will display associated and unassociated products) from the drop-down, and click the **Search** button. You can narrow your results further by using the **ID**, **Name**, **SKU**, **Price**, or **Position** filters (although the position filter only works for products already associated to the category). Select the checkboxes of all products that you wish to associate the category, and unselect all checkboxes of products you wish to deassociate. After a product is checked the Position field will become active and you'll be able to enter a sort value, which controls the order in which the products display on the front end, regardless of the order in this grid.

The screenshot shows the 'Category Products' grid for the 'Cell Phones' category. At the top, there are tabs for 'General Information', 'Category Products', and 'Custom Design'. Below the tabs, there are buttons for 'Reset', 'Delete Category', and 'Save Category'. The grid has columns for 'ID', 'Name', 'SKU', 'Price', and 'Position'. A dropdown menu in the first column allows selecting 'Yes', 'No', or 'Any'. There are checkboxes next to each row. The 'Position' column for the last four rows contains input fields with values 3, 5, 1, and 2 respectively. The 'Price' column shows prices like \$150.00, \$199.99, \$399.99, and \$349.99. The 'SKU' column shows codes like MM-A900M, 8525PDA, sw010i, and bb0100. The 'Name' column lists products such as Samsung MM-A900M Ace, AT&T 8525 PDA, Sony Ericsson W810i, BlackBerry 8100 Pearl, and Nokia 2610 Phone. At the bottom of the grid, there are 'Reset Filter' and 'Search' buttons.

	ID	Name	SKU	Price	Position
Yes					
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	20	Samsung MM-A900M Ace	MM-A900M	\$ 150.00	0 3
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	19	AT&T 8525 PDA	8525PDA	\$ 199.99	0 5
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	18	Sony Ericsson W810i	sw010i	\$ 399.99	0 1
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	17	BlackBerry 8100 Pearl	bb0100	\$ 349.99	0 2
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	16	Nokia 2610 Phone	n2610	\$ 149.99	0 4

Assigning designs at the category level

You can customize the design of each category individually in the Custom Design tab. This controls the look of the category page, including the objects on the page and the structure of the page.

1. Select the design you want from the **Custom Design** drop-down. Magento comes with several different design options out of the box, but you can add your own by... If you leave this drop-down blank, it will

automatically use the **Current package name** design. This can be edited by navigating to System > Configuration and clicking the Design tab. Enter the name of the design you want in the Current package name field, and this design will apply to all categories for which you do not specify a different design.

2. Select your preference from the **Apply To** drop-down. **This category only** means that the design will only apply to this one category page. **This category and its products** means that the design will apply on this category page, and on the pages of all products associated to this category. If a product is associated to multiple categories, each with a different design, the design displayed on that product page will be determined by the design of the category page from which the user navigates to that product. **This category and its child categories** means that the design will apply on this category page, and on the pages of all sub-categories, sub-sub-categories, and so on. If a child category has a different design selected than its parent category, then... **All** mean thats the design will apply to this category, its child categories, and its products.
3. With the **Active From** and **Active To** fields, you can select a time frame in which the category will automatically switch to a design, and then switch back to the blank option when the time frame ends. This is perfect for the holidays, so that you can create a holiday design for you pages, and then have your site automatically switch back to the normal design whenever you want, without having to remember to do it yourself.
4. The **Page Layout** drop-down determines the structural aspects of the page. **No layout updates** uses the default settings that come with the Magento installation. **Empty** displays the category page without any objects, except for the content (products or static blocks only), category name, and view options (number to display per page, view as grid or list, and sort be options). **1 column** displays the contents, category name and view options, as well as the header, footer, search field, and navigation bar. **Column on the left** adds the left column to the 1 column display, which by default includes the currency selection and layered navigation. **Column on the right** adds the right column to the 1 column display, which by default includes the shopping cart view,

wishlist, compared products list, polls, and newsletter sign-up. **3**

columns displays both the left and the right column.

5. The **Custom Layout Update** is essentially a static block, with a few differences.

- Rather than HTML, the structure must be in XML format.
- The Update will display at the bottom of the page, below the products, whereas a static block will display above the products (if the static block is set to display with products)
- The Update will display on the page only during the dates specified in the Active date range.

Using static blocks with categories

If you would like customers to be taken to a landing page when they select the category, instead of the standard product listing page, you can do so by enabling static blocks on your category page. This is controlled the in **General Information** tab.

1. In the **Display Mode** drop-down, select what content you want to display in your category page. **Products only** means that the products associated to the category will display, but not any static blocks. **Static block only** means that the selected static block will display, but none of the products. This is ideal if you want to get your customers excited about the category before showing them products or if there is specific content you want to show for a certain category (tip: Make this page an *anchor category* and let your customers use layered navigation to find their products after viewing the landing page). **Static block and products** means that the static block will display with the products listed directly beneath it. This is useful if you want to have several category pages where the same static block content is needed, but each feature different products.
2. In the CMS Block drop-down, select which static block you would like to display on your category page. It will include all existing static blocks, which can be created in the static block manager by navigating to CMS > Static Blocks. For more information about creating static blocks, please read the section about them in [Chapter 5: Promotions, Marketing, and Content Pages](#).

Attributes

Creating an Attribute

In Magento, Attributes are quantifiable or descriptive aspects of a product, from the color, to the manufacturer, to the SKU number. There are two kinds of attributes in Magento: Simple Attributes and System Attributes. By default, Magento includes all the necessary System Attributes. These cannot be deleted, and every product must have each of these attributes. Therefore, all Attribute Sets must include these products (more on Attribute sets in the next section). These type of attributes include Name, Price, and SKU, without which a product would not function. Simple Attributes, on the other hand, are attributes created by the Store Owner. These will likely be more specific for individual products, and therefore will not necessarily be included in every Attribute set. For example, if you were to create an attribute for color, with values of blue, green, yellow, etc., you may want to apply this attribute to an Attribute Set for shirts, which you sell in various colors, but you probably would not include it in an Attribute Set for DVDs, for which color is not really an applicable attribute. To create a Simple Attribute, navigate to Catalog > Attributes > Manage Attributes, and click **Add New Attribute** in the top right of the page.

Properties

Attribute Properties

- **Attribute Identifier** - This is the name of the attribute used by the system. It will appear in the Attributes list in the Attribute Code column, and it will be used when managing Attribute Sets, however it will not appear on the Front-end. Each attribute you create must have a unique Attribute Identifier, and this value cannot contain spaces.
- **Scope** - This drop-down determines the level at which the values of this attribute are shared. When creating a product, you will be able to see the Scope to the right of each attribute. You can choose to make any attribute shared Globally, at the Website Level, or at the Store View Level. Global means that the value of this attribute for a given product must be the same throughout your site. Website means that the value of this attribute for a given product can differ in different Websites, however it cannot differ between Store Views contained under the same Website. Store View means the value of this attribute for a given product can differ in all Websites and all Store Views. For

example, if you were creating an attribute called Color, with a Store View Scope, you would be able to set the color of a product to green in one Store View, and blue in another Store View.

- **Catalog Input Type for Store Owner** - This describes what kind of data the attribute will store. What's set here determines how data entry for this attribute will take place. For example, a Description attribute would use a text field, so that you can manually enter a description for each product, whereas a Color attribute would use a drop-down, so that you choose the color of each product from a drop-down list (the values of which you will enter in the Manage Label / Options tab).
- **Default Value** - If you choose to enter a Default Value, each new product created with this attribute will automatically have this attribute prepopulated with the value you enter here. However, you will always be able to edit the prepopulated value. This field will not display if you have selected Multiple Select, Dropdown, or Media Image as your Input Type. If you have a Dropdown or Multiple Select Input Type, you will be able select the Default Value in the Manage Label / Options tab.
- **Unique Value** - If you designate an attribute to be a Unique Value, that means the value selected or entered for this attribute for each product must be different. If Color was a unique value, only one product could be green, one be blue, etc.
- **Values Required** - If you require values, you must select a value for this attribute for each product you create. You will not be able to save a product if this attribute is left blank.
- **Input Validation for Store Owner** - This controls the type of check Magento places on the values entered for this attribute for each product. If you select None, you can enter any type of information as the value for this attribute. If you select Email, for example, Magento will make sure that the value entered for each product resembles an email address. If it does not, you will receive a warning message.
- **Apply To** - Decide which Product Types will include this attribute. The three Product Types in Magento are Simple, Grouped, and Configurable Products (there is more information on the differences between these Product Types in the Products section [later in this chapter](#)). If you select **Selected Product Types**, a multiple select menu will appear where you can choose to which of the Products Types this attribute will be associated.
- **Use To Create Configurable Product** - This drop-down will only appear if the Scope is Global and the Input Type is Dropdown. If you select Yes, this

attribute will be a Configurable Attribute. When creating a Configurable Product, the next step after selecting the Attribute Set and Product Type is to select the Configurable Attributes for this product. You will see a list of all the existing Configurable Attributes associated to the Attribute Set. If you select the checkbox, this attribute will be a Configurable Attribute for this product. If you leave the checkbox empty, this attribute (while still a Configurable Attribute in your attribute settings) will not be a Configurable Attribute for this product. If an attribute is a Configurable Attribute, this means that the customer will be able to select the value of the attribute from a drop-down in the front-end. It is customer configurable. For more information about Configurable Products, please refer to the Products section [later in this chapter](#). *Note: This drop-down is not related to the Apply To menu above. An attribute can be a Configurable Attribute even if it is not applied to Configurable Products. If this is the case, you will be able to select the attribute as a Configurable Product when creating a product, but you will not be able to see this attribute among the product's other attributes in the New Product page.*

Frontend Properties

- **Use in quick search** - If you select Yes, Magento will search all the product values for this attribute when your customer uses the search bar in the header. If you select to use Color in the quick search, your customers will be able to type in green or blue and find products that match that color. For more details, see [Chapter 5: Promotions, Marketing and Content Pages](#).
- **Use in advanced search** - This is very similar to the quick search. However, in the Advanced Search, each attribute will have its own field, rather than there being one search field. If you select Yes, a field will be created for this attribute in the Advanced Search page. For more details, see [Chapter 5](#).
- **Comparable on Front-end** - If you select Yes, a row will be created for this attribute in the Compare Products pop-up window. For more details, see [Chapter 5](#).
- **Use in Layered Navigation** - Magento's Layered Navigation allows your customers to filter down into a category's products using any attribute that is "filterable" for Layered Navigation. The Layered Navigation menu will display in the left column of your category pages, and will contain all of the attributes which are filterable. Under each attribute will display the various values of that attribute. Clicking one of these values will filter the list of products in that

category page so that only products matching that attribute value will display. There are two types of filterable attributes, which you can select from this drop-down: **Filterable (with results)** and **Filterable (no results)**. This determines which values will display in the Layered Navigation menu. If you select Filterable (with results), only values that correspond to products in that category page will display in the menu (that is, only values that produce “results” when used as a filter). If you select Filterable (no results), all values that you’ve created in the Manage Label / Options tab will list, whether or not they correspond to any particular products in that category page (it includes values that do not produce “results” when used as a filter). If there are no filterable attributes in a particular category page, the Layered Navigation menu will not display. In order to make an attribute filterable, the Input Type must be either Dropdown, Multiple Select, or Price.

- **Position** - This determines the position of the attribute in the Layered Navigation menu with respect to the other filterable attributes.
- **Visible on Catalog Pages on Front-end** - This field only appears for Simple Attributes. On the product page in the front-end, there is a section called Additional Information, that displays below the Product Description section. The attribute name and value for all “visible” Simple Attributes will display in this section. If a product does not have any visible Simple Attributes (or if the product does not have any values selected for its Simple Attributes) there will be no Additional Information section on the front-end.

Attribute Information		
Properties	New Product Attribute	
Manage Label / Options		
Attribute Properties		
Attribute Identifier *	shirt_size	< For internal use. Must be unique with no spaces
Scope	Global	< Declare attribute value saving scope
Catalog Input Type for Store Owner	Dropdown	
Unique Value	No	< Not shared with other products
Values Required	No	
Input Validation for Store Owner	None	
Apply To *	All Product Types	
Use To Create Configurable Product	No	
Frontend Properties		
Use in quick search	Yes	
Use in advanced search	Yes	
Comparable on Front-end	Yes	
Use in Layered Navigation	Filterable (with results)	< Can be used only with catalog input type Dropdown, Multiple Select and Price
Position	1	< Position of attribute in layered navigation block
Visible on Catalog Pages on Front-end	Yes	

Manage Label / Options

- **Manage Titles** - In the **Admin** field, you must enter the name of the attribute as it will appear in the admin. For each Store View, you can specify a different name for this attribute. This is useful if you manage multiple Store Views with different languages. For example, in the Admin field, type Color; in the UK Store View field, type Colour; in the French Store View field, type Couleur. If you leave the field blank for any of the Store Views, the Admin Label will be used.
- **Manage Options** - This section will only appear if the Input Type is Dropdown or Multiple Select. In order to have a drop-down or multiple select menu in the product page, you must have predetermined values to populate these menus. This is where the values for these menus are predetermined. This works very similar to the Manage Titles section above. For each value you wish to create, click **Add Option**. You can enter an unlimited number of values. For each value, you must enter a name in the Admin field, and you have the option to enter a different name for each Store view. For example, create two options. For the first option, enter Green in the Admin field; leave the UK Store View field blank, because it uses the same name; enter Vert in the French Store View field. For the second option, enter Blue in the Admin field; leave the UK Store View field blank; enter Bleu in the French Store View field. You will also have the option to select the position and which value(s) is the default. Enter a numerical value in the **Position** field, and this will determine the sort order of the values in the drop-down/multiple select menu relative to each other. For the Dropdown Input Type, you will have an **Is Default** radio button with which you can select one value. For the Multiple Select Input Type, you will have an Is Default checkbox with which you can select multiple values.

The screenshot shows the 'New Product Attribute' configuration interface. On the left, there's a sidebar with 'Attribute Information' and 'Properties'. The main area has tabs for 'Manage Label / Options' and 'Manage Options (values of your attribute)'. The 'Manage Label / Options' tab is active, showing a table for 'Manage Titles (Size, Color, etc.)'. The 'Manage Options' tab shows a table for 'Manage Options (values of your attribute)' with three rows: Large, Medium, and Small. Each row has columns for Admin, English, Burmese, Chinese, Polish, Portuguese, Position, and Is Default. There are 'Add Option', 'Delete', and 'Edit' buttons for each row.

Admin	English	Burmese	Chinese	Polish	Portuguese	Position	Is Default
Size			大小		Tamanho		<input type="radio"/>
Large			大	Grande	1		<input checked="" type="radio"/>
Medium			中	Méio	2		<input type="checkbox"/>
Small			小	Pequeno	3		<input type="checkbox"/>

Managing Attribute Sets

An Attribute Set is a collection of attributes, customized to fit certain types of products. All Attribute Sets must contain all of Magento's System Attributes, but you can customize them to include different combinations of Simple Attributes. For example, if you sell several different kinds of T-shirts in your site, you would want to create a "T-shirts" Attribute Set, which includes the Simple Attributes commonly shared by all of your T-shirts. This may include color, size, gender, and brand. Once you have created each of these Simple Attributes (refer back to the previous section for more details), you can associate them to an Attribute Set. A product is then associated to an Attribute Set during product creation, and the Attribute Set's Simple Attributes will appear in the New Product page so that you can set the various values.

Creating an Attribute Set

To create an Attribute Set, navigate to Catalog > Attributes > Manage Attribute Sets and click **Add New Set** in the top right of the page. Before configuring the Attribute Set, you must enter a name and import Attributes from an existing Attribute Set. The **Name** will not be used anywhere on the front-end, and can be edited at any point. Even if you have not created any Attribute Sets previously, you can select the **Default** Attribute Set from the Based On drop-down, which comes with Magento by default, from which you will import Attributes. This includes all of the System Attributes, organized into Groups according to their function. The Default attribute can be customized just as any Attribute Set that you create. Once you have created additional Attribute Sets, you can choose any of these from the Based On drop-down, which will import the Simple Attributes and Groups from that Attribute Set, saving you time during the configuration process. When you are finished, click **Save Attribute Set**. The Attribute Set will be created, and you will be directed to the configuration section.

- **Edit Set Name** - This field will contain the name that you entered in the previous step. It can be edited at any point during the configuration, or later on by editing the Attribute Set.
- **Groups** - Groups are like folders which contain attributes. Each Group corresponds to a different tab in the New Product page. This helps organize the attributes by function so that you can edit them in the product page more efficiently. Magento comes with five Groups by default: General, Prices, Meta

Information, Images, and Design. These contain the various System Attributes, marked with a red circle  on the attribute icon. System Attributes cannot be removed from an Attribute Set, however they can be moved to different Groups. Therefore, you can remove a Group as long as there are no System Attributes within it. The ordering of both the Groups and the attributes can be changed by clicking and dragging it. This affects the order of the tabs and attributes in the product page, respectively. You can also create a new Group, to which you can move System Attributes, or associate Simple Attributes. To do this, click Add New, and enter the name of the Group in the pop-up.



- **Unassigned Attributes** - This list contains all of the Simple Attributes which you have created. You can associate one of these attribute to your Attribute Set by clicking and dragging this attribute into the desired Group. Once it is associated to this Attribute Set, it will no longer appear in the Unassigned Attributes list. To disassociate an attribute, click and drag it back to the Unassigned Attributes list.

The screenshot shows a software interface for managing product attributes. On the left, under 'Groups', there is a tree view of attribute categories:

- General
 - name
 - description
 - short_description
 - sku
 - weight
 - color
 - news_from_date
 - news_to_date
 - status
 - tax_class_id
 - url_key
 - visibility
 - gift_message_available
- T-shirt Attributes
 - shirt_size
- Prices
 - price
 - special_price
 - enriched_from_date

At the bottom of the tree view, a context menu is open over the 'brand_name' attribute, showing options like 'Move to Group' and 'Delete'. Above the tree view, there are two buttons: '+ Add New' and 'Delete Selected Group'. A note says 'Double click on a group to rename it'. On the right, under 'Unassigned Attributes', three attributes are listed: brand_name, manufacturer, and gender.

When you are finished, click Save Attribute Set again to save the configurations.

Assigning Attribute Sets to Products

When creating a new product, you must first select the product's Attribute Set.

Navigate to Catalog > Manage Products and click **Add Product** in the top right of

The screenshot shows the 'New Product' creation page. In the 'Create Product Settings' section, there are two dropdown menus:

- 'Attribute Set' dropdown: Shows 'Default' as the selected option.
- 'Product Type' dropdown: Shows 'T-shirts' as the selected option.

Below the dropdowns is a 'Continue' button with a checked checkbox.

the page.

Selecting the Attribute Set will load all of the corresponding Groups (tabs) and attributes into the product creation page.



Note: Once the Attribute Set has been selected, it cannot be changed. You can change the attributes in a product by creating a new product and assigning a different Attribute Set. You can also edit the Attribute Set, and add or remove attributes, however this will affect all products associated to this Attribute Set.

Products

Before you begin to create the products that you will be offering in your webstore, let's take a moment to explore the different product types that Magento offers, and what these differences mean. In Magento, there are three product types that you can create: Simple, Configurable, and Grouped. Let's begin with Simple, because this is the foundation for both Configurable and Grouped Products. A Simple product is basically what its name indicates. It is the simplest type of product to sell on your website; one individual product, where the attributes are determined by the store owner. It will have system attributes (as all products require), and can have simple attributes as well. One example of a Simple Product would be a suit jacket. It is presented on your website as a standalone item, and as the store owner, you define that it is black, with three buttons on the front. When your customers arrive at the page for this product, they can see what the color and button count are in the product information section, their only option is whether or not to buy this item.

A Configurable product, however, offers much more customer interaction. Let's stick with the example of the suit jacket, because, as a Simple Product, is the foundation for a Configurable Product. In addition to this one suit jacket, you start to carry slightly different versions of the same jacket: a navy blue version, as well

as one with four buttons on the front (in black and navy). You create three new Simple Products (navy/three buttons, black/four buttons, and navy/four buttons), and if you only use the Simple Product feature, you would have four product pages, one for each combination of color and buttons. Using Configurable Products, however, you can combine all four pages into one, so that your customer is guaranteed find the exact suit jacket they desire, while simultaneously making navigating your site as easy as possible. Once you have created the four Simple suit jackets, you can create a Configurable suit jacket, and associated all four simple products to it. You will not set the color or button count of the Configurable Product when you create it, but rather, your customer will set this when they purchase it. It is a Configurable Product because your customers get to configure the attributes themselves. So, you can choose not to display any of the four Simple Products on your site, but rather only display the one Configurable Product. When your customers arrive at this page, instead of seeing the attributes listed in the product information section, they will see a drop-down for color (with options for black or navy) and a drop-down for button count (with options for three or four). The combination of attributes they choose determine which of the four Simple Products they are actually purchasing. The attributes point to the Simple Product, so that Magento knows which Simple Product to place in the order. The Configurable Product is therefore not a product at all, but rather a feature used to display multiple Simple Products on one product page.

In this sense, a Grouped Product is very similar to a Configurable Product. It is also only a feature used to display multiple Simple Products on one product page. However, it displays them in a different fashion. Let's again stick with the example of the suit jacket. Forget about the three new versions that you began to carry, and let's go back to the classic black with three buttons design. Along with this suit jacket, you also sell matching slacks and vest, the venerable three-piece suit. Using Simple Products alone, you would have three separate pages, one for each piece. But you feel that these should be sold together, because they are part of a set. This can be easily accomplished using Grouped Products. Simply create a Grouped Product – maybe you want to call it Three-Piece Suit – and associate all three Simple Products to it. On your website, the page for this Grouped Product will list all three Simple Products, each with its own quantity field. This way, your customers are alerted of the presence of the set, and even encouraged to buy the pieces together, however they still have the option to buy the pieces individually

(you can actually force them to buy all three pieces together, but we will get into that later on).

Setting up configuration and Attributes

Now that you are ready to start creating products, make sure that you have everything that you need set up. There is one configuration feature that needs addressed. If you haven't already done so, navigate to System > Configuration and select the Catalog tab. In the **Product Options** box, select your **Default Tax Class**. By default Magento comes with one option for this drop-down: **Taxable Goods**. If you will be selling products on your site which will need to be taxed, select this option. The **Tax Class** for all new products will automatically be set to Taxable Goods, which will save you the time of having to manually change this option for each new product. You can learn more about setting up the Tax Rates and Tax Rules that apply to the Taxable Goods Tax Class, as well as creating new Tax Classes in [Chapter 4: Get Ready for Selling](#).

In addition to this configuration setting, make sure that you have created Attributes and Attribute Sets, which you can apply to your new products. You cannot change a product's Attribute Set once the product has been created (although you can add Attributes to the Attribute Set and thereby add them to the product), so make sure that you have the correct Attribute Set set up for your product before creating your product. For more information about Attributes and Attribute Sets, refer back to [those sections](#) in this chapter.

Creating a Simple Product

1. Navigate to Catalog > Manage Products.
2. In the top right corner, click **Add Product**.
3. Select an Attribute Set. Select **Default** if you haven't created any attribute sets. This will determine what product data you can enter. You can refer back to the previous section for more information about managing Attribute Sets.
4. Select **Simple Product**.
5. Press **Continue**.
6. Enter all product information. Once you've set up the product, you'll be taken to the product's data entry page. The fields here may change depending on your Attribute Set (you may get rid of weight but add

megapixels, for example). If you realize that you want to add an attribute to this product before creating it, there is short cut available. Rather than having to go to the attributes page and create an attribute, and then having to go to the Attribute Sets page and add that attribute to the Set, you can simply click **Create New Attribute** in the product page. This button exists in all five default Groups (tabs) and any Groups which you have created. Note: Not all tabs correspond to Groups. Groups are folders that exist in the Attribute Set. This opens a pop-up window, which is identical to the New Attribute page. When you enter the attribute information and click Save Attribute, the attribute will be created, and automatically associated to the Attribute Set for the product you are editing, into the Group in which you clicked the Create New Attribute button. You will immediately see the new attribute at the bottom of new product page. If you are managing multiple Websites or Store Views, the attribute Scope will appear next to each attribute in the new product page. This can be either **[GLOBAL]**, **[WEBSITE]**, or **[STORE VIEW]**. This refers to the level at which this attribute is shared. For example, if the attribute Color had a **[WEBSITE]** Scope, you would be able to set the color of a product to green in one website, and blue in another website. However, within each website, all the different Store Views would have to have the same color. The Scope can be defined for each attribute. You can refer back to the section about Attributes for more information on this configuration.

General

General

Name *	<input type="text" value="Black Suit Jacket"/>	[STORE VIEW]
Description *	<input type="text" value="This jacket is sleek and simple, and will never go out of style. Sewn from only the finest Italian fabrics, it will last you a lifetime. A great accessory for the office, dinner with your in-laws, or just put it on when you are sitting on the couch so that you can feel important."/>	[STORE VIEW]
Short Description *	<input type="text" value="A stylish black jacket for any formal occasion."/>	[STORE VIEW]
SKU *	<input type="text" value="black_jacket_1"/>	[GLOBAL]
Weight *	<input type="text" value="2.3"/>	[GLOBAL]
Set Product as New from Date	<input type="text"/>	[WEBSITE]
Set Product as New to Date	<input type="text"/>	[WEBSITE]
Status *	<input type="button" value="Enabled"/>	[WEBSITE]
URL key	<input type="text"/>	[GLOBAL]
Visibility *	<input type="button" value="Catalog, Search"/>	[STORE VIEW]
Allow Gift Message	<input type="button" value="Use config"/>	[GLOBAL]

- **Name** - The product name as it will appear in the front-end
- **Description** - The product's description. It will display in the main section of the product page.
- **Short Description** - Short description is specific to this design package. This description will display at the top of the product page, and in category listings in List view.
- **SKU** - The products SKU. Magento uses SKU as a unique identifier for this product, across all stores and websites. SKU is global, meaning if you update the SKU for a product in one store, it will update in all other stores as well.

- **Weight** - The product's weight - usually used for shipping calculations
- **Set Product as New from/to Date** - In these fields, enter the date range in which the product will be promoted as a new product. For more information about this promotion feature, refer to [Chapter 5: Promotions, Marketing and Content Pages](#).
- **Status** - Two available - Enabled, Disabled. “Enabled” displays normally in the front-end, and “Disabled” doesn’t display in the front-end.
- **URL key** - The Search Engine Friendly URL Identifier adds a relative URL path which can be entered in place of the standard Target Path. It is Search Engine Friendly because it can use the name of the product instead of the ID#. For more information about URL Keys, refer to the section about [URL Rewrites](#). If you leave this field blank, it will automatically generate with the name of the product upon creation of the product. If you enter a value here manually, you cannot use spaces in this field.
- **Visibility** - You can decide whether your product will display in the page(s) of its associated category(ies), display when your customer searches for the product, both, or neither. It may be useful to “hide” certain products from your customers if they are associated to a Configurable or Grouped Product, so that the product is only visible through the Configurable or Grouped Product’s page, and not visible separately.
- **Allow Gift Message** - If you have enabled Product Level Gift Messages in the Configuration page (for more about this, see [Chapter 4: Get Ready for Selling](#)), you can allow your customer to enter a gift message for a specific product during checkout by selecting Yes. If you select Use config, it will use the value in the **Allow Product Level Gift Messages** drop-down in the system configuration. This differs from Order Level Gift Messages because your customers can add a different message for each product that has this feature enable. This is useful if they create one order, but ship to multiple addresses.

Prices

Prices

Price *	299.99	[WEBSITE]								
	[USD]									
Special Price		[WEBSITE]								
	[USD]									
Special Price From Date	<input type="text"/>	[WEBSITE]								
Special Price To Date	<input type="text"/>	[WEBSITE]								
Cost		[WEBSITE]								
	[USD]									
Tax Class *	Taxable Goods	[WEBSITE]								
Tier Price	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Customer Group</th> <th>Qty</th> <th>Price</th> <th>Action</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td colspan="4">+ Add Tier</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		Customer Group	Qty	Price	Action	+ Add Tier			
Customer Group	Qty	Price	Action							
+ Add Tier										

- **Price** - The price of your item as it will display in the front-end. If you have a special or discount, this will be the original price.
- **Special Price** - You can enter a Special Price for this product. In the front-end, this will appear underneath the original price (referred to as the Regular Price), which will be crossed out. The Special Price will display in red, and be referred to the Special Price. If you wish, you can allow customers to be alerted of new specials via RSS feeds. There is more information about RSS Feeds in [Chapter 5: Promotions, Marketing, and Content Pages](#).
- **Special Price From/To Date** - You can enter a date range within which the Special price will be active. This price will apply automatically when the From Date arrives and deactivate automatically when the To Date arrives. If you leave this range blank, the Special Price will apply until you remove it.
- **Cost** - The Cost is for internal purposes and does not require a value.
- **Tax Class** - This is the Product Tax Class to which this product will be associated. This determines which Tax Rule will be used for this product, and consequently the Tax Rate that will be charged to your customers. For more information about taxes, refer to [Chapter 4: Get Ready for Selling](#).
- **Tier Price** - [Chapter 5](#) also provides more information about Tier Pricing.

Meta Information

Meta Information

Meta Title	Black Suit Jacket	[STORE VIEW]
Meta Keywords	black, suit jacket, stylish, Italian fabrics	[STORE VIEW]
Meta Description	A stylish black jacket for any formal occasion.	[STORE VIEW] ▶ Maximum 255 chars

All related meta information is contained from [meta_title](#), [meta_keywords](#), [meta_description](#).

Keywords and **Meta Description** can be entered for this product. The **Page Title** will display in the browser's title bar when this product is being viewed. Meta Keywords and Description will show in the tag of the product's HTML source.

Images

Images							
<small>⚠ Image type and information need to be specified for each store view.</small>							
Image	Label	Sort Order	Base Image [STORE VIEW]	Small Image [STORE VIEW]	Thumbnail [STORE VIEW]	Exclude	Remove
No image	Jacket	1	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Browse Files... Upload Files

By default, Magento requires you to designate three image types: **Thumbnail**, **Small**, and **Base**. These images each correspond to different locations on the front-end where they will display. When first creating a product, you will not have any custom images uploaded. Therefore, all three image types will be set to **No image**. This means that they will use your global **Product Image Placeholders**.

To configure these, navigate to System > Configuration, click the Catalog tab in the left column, and upload a placeholder image for each image type. To add custom images to a product, click **Browse Files** and locate the desired image. Do this multiple times until you have selected all your desired images, then click **Upload Files**. The images will list vertically in the image page. By default, all images uploaded here will display under **MORE VIEWS** on the front-end. This is located under the main product image, and clicking any of the images displayed here will open a pop-up window with the ability to browse through all the images associated to the product. For each image in the admin, you can add a **Label**, which will display above the image in the pop-up window. You can add a **Sort Order**, which will determine the order in which the images are displayed in the MORE VIEWS section and the order in which they are browsed in the pop-up window. You can designate which of these images is associated to which of the three image types by selecting the radio button in the appropriate column (only one image can be the Thumbnail image, only one can be the Small image, and only one can be the Base image). The images will automatically resize to fit the dimensions of each image type. The Base image, however, works a little bit differently. This is the main image that displays prominently on the product page. It will resize to fit the image window, however, if it is larger than the window, your customers will be able to zoom in on the image, and then double-click the image so that it displays the entire image outside of the original image window at the designated zoom level. If you want an image to only associate to one of the three image types, and not display in the MORE VIEWS section, you can check the **Exclude** checkbox. To remove an image, check the **Remove** checkbox before saving the changes.

In addition to these features, Magento allows you to add your own custom watermarks to the images in your site, to hamper visitors from making unwanted copies. If you would like to add watermarks, navigate to System > Configuration, and click the Design tab in the left column. For each image type, you can upload a separate image file that will be used as the watermark, define the size of the watermark, and define the position in which it will be displayed relative to your product images.

Design

There is more about this in the [Assigning Designs at the product level](#) section below.

Inventory

Inventory settings can be configured individually per product, however there are also several very important global Inventory configuration settings. Additionally, many of the individual product settings can be set to use the default value (the global setting). Therefore, it is beneficial to discuss the product settings and global settings together. Please refer to the section about [Stock Management](#) later in this chapter for more detailed information.

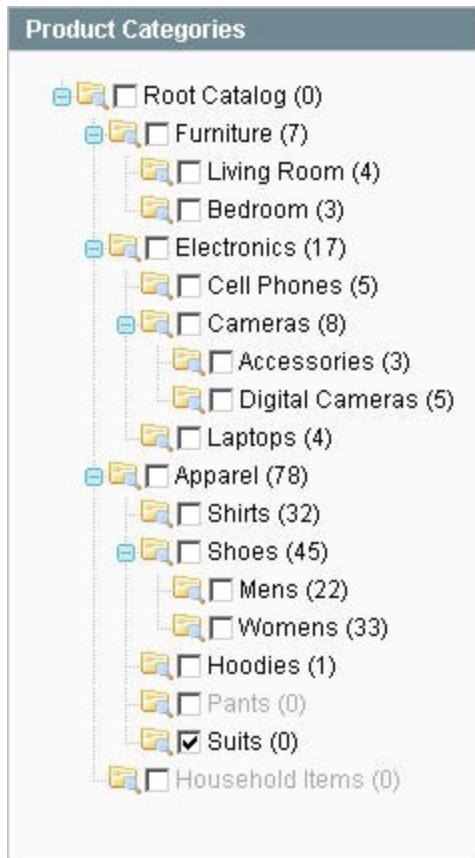
Websites

The screenshot shows a configuration panel titled 'Product In Websites'. It contains two sections: 'Main Website' (checked) and 'Udi Seven' (unchecked). Under 'Main Website', there is a 'Main Store' section listing 'English', 'German', and 'French'. Under 'Udi Seven', there is a 'Udi Seven 1' section listing 'English Store View'.

Product In Websites	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Main Website
Main Store	
English	
German	
French	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Udi Seven
Udi Seven 1	
English Store View	

If you're managing multiple Websites, you can select the Websites to which this product is associated by checking the checkbox next to the Websites from which you want the product to be available. Each Website will display here with all of the associated Stores and Store Views, so that you know exactly which Website you are viewing.

Categories



This tab will display the global category tree, which a checkbox next to each category name. Selecting a checkbox will associate this product to that category, and you can select as few or as many associated categories as you wish. For the categories to display on the homepage you must make sure to add the product to a category below the root catalog. If you have not created a new category below the root catalog then do so now.

Related Products/Up-sells/Cross-Sells

Each of these tabs contains a product list, from which you can search for and select products in your store which you wish to be related, up-sells or cross-sells of the product being edited. There is more information about these three features [later in this chapter](#).

Product Alerts

Product Alerts						
Price alert subscription was saved successfully						
Page <input type="text" value="1"/> of 1 pages View <input type="text" value="20"/> per page Total 3 records found						
First Name	Last Name	Email	Price	Date Subscribed	Last Notification	Send Count
Cherith	Cutestory	cherith@example.com	\$ 299.99	Apr 28, 2008		0
Santos L.	Halper	santos@example.com	\$ 299.99	Apr 26, 2008		0
Professor Peter	Van Nostrand	peter@example.com	\$ 299.99	Apr 26, 2008		0
Stock notification was saved successfully						
Page <input type="text" value="1"/> of 1 pages View <input type="text" value="20"/> per page Total 1 records found						
First Name	Last Name	Email	Date Subscribed	Last Notification	Send Count	
Cherith	Cutestory	cherith@example.com	Apr 22, 2008		0	

If you have either of both product alerts enabled, the tabs will appear, showing a list of all subscribers to both Price Alerts and Stock Alerts for this product. For each subscriber, both alert lists show the name, email, the date they subscribed to this alert, the time that the most recent notification was sent to them, and the number of times a notification was sent to them. For the Price Alert, this is also one additional column. For each subscriber, it shows the price that the product had at the time they described. This includes Special Prices. There is more information on how to configure Product Alerts [earlier in this chapter](#).

Custom Attributes

Jacket Attributes

Color	<input type="text" value="Black"/>	[GLOBAL]
Button Count	<input type="text" value="Three"/>	[GLOBAL]

If you have added any custom Simple Attributes, make sure to configure those as well. These can be scattered throughout the existing tabs, or you can create new tabs in which to put them. It all depends on the configuration of your Attribute Set. In this case, the suit jacket Simple Attributes are in a new tab called Jacket Attributes.

These are all of the tabs which appear when creating a new product. If you press **Save And Continue Edit**, you will see three new tabs appear in the left column.

Product Reviews

You'll see a list of all reviews that have been added to this product. There is more information about managing Product Reviews in [Chapter 9: User-Generated Content](#).

Product Tags

Shows all tags that this product has been given by users, and the number of times each tag has been used. [Chapter 9](#) also has more information about managing product tags.

Customers Tagged Product

A breakdown of individual customers who have tagged this product - the grid shows their first and last name, email, and tag used.

When you have completed all of your edits, press **Save**. You have now created a Simple Product.

Creating a Configurable Product

1. By its nature, a configurable product is not useful unless there are simple products which can be associated to it. Therefore, the first step in creating a Configurable Product is to create two or more simple products, containing different attributes, that your customer will be able to configure on the front-end. Once you have created one Simple Product, use the Duplicate Product feature to create the separate products without having to enter every value several times. Once you have created and saved your first product select the **Duplicate** button on that product's page. For the duplicated product, change the attribute values which you are going to allow your customers to configure. Only Simple Products will have a Duplicate button. *Note: The values of unique attributes (such as SKU) will not duplicate to the duplicated product, and these will need to be entered manually. The duplicated product will be created with a Status of Disabled.* If you have forgotten to create all of the Simple Products prior to creating the Configurable Product, you will have the option to create Simple Products during product creation, in the Associated Products tab (more below).
2. To create a configurable product, navigate to Catalog > Manage Products.
3. In the top right corner, click **Add Product**.
4. Select an Attribute Set. Select **Default** if you haven't created any attribute sets. This will determine what product data you can enter. You can refer back to the previous section for more information about

managing Attribute Sets.

Create Product Settings

Attribute Set	Suit Jacket
Product Type	Configurable Product

Continue

5. Select **Configurable Product**.
6. Click **Continue**.
7. Select Configurable Attributes.

Select Configurable Attributes

 Only attributes with scope "Global", input type "Dropdown" and Use To Create Configurable Product "Yes" are available.

Color	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Button Count	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Continue

For an attribute to be listed here, it must be associated to the attribute set which you selected in step 4, and it must not be a System Attribute. Also, as described in the message on the page (see image above), The Scope must be Global, the Input Type must be Dropdown, and Use To Create Configurable Product must be Yes. If an attribute is selected, it will not be configurable in the admin (as opposed to Simple Products, for which all attributes are configured in the admin). Instead, a dropdown menu will appear on the front-end for this attribute, and the customer will be able to configure it.

Color:	Choose option...
Button Count:	Choose option...

The options from which your customer will be able to select will depend on which Simple Products are associated to this Configurable Product (more on this below). If an attribute is not selected in this step, it will be configured in the admin just like is done for a Simple Product, and it will be fixed on the front-end. For example, if you were to select Color to be

Configurable and Button Count not to be, then you could select the Button Count to be Three in the admin, and associate one Simple Product suit jacket with a Color black and one with a Color navy. On the front-end, the suit jacket Button Count will be set at three, but your customer will be able to select their preferred Color, black or navy, from the drop-down.

8. Press Continue.
9. Enter all product information. This is almost exactly the same process as entering the product information for a simple product. There are, however, three major differences.

Weight

When a customer purchases a Configurable Product, they are not actually purchasing this product, but rather one of the associated Simple Products. Therefore, there is no weight for a Configurable Product, because the weight depends on that of each Simple Product individually.

Inventory

Just like weight, the inventory options for a configurable product depend on those of the individual Simple Products. In the Inventory tab, you can set the configurable product to be In Stock or Out of Stock, but nothing more. If you select In Stock, it will display as In stock on the front-end, but each attribute will only be purchasable if the corresponding simple product is In Stock. If your customer selects an Out of Stock attribute and adds it to the cart, they will receive a message saying “This product is currently out of stock.” If you select Out of Stock, the configurable product will display as Out of Stock on the front-end, and will not be available to add to the cart, regardless of the Stock Availability of each Simple Product.

Associated Products

This tab does not exist for Simple Products. At the bottom of the page will be the product list from which you can associate or disassociate Simple Products to the Configurable Product. When first navigating to the page, it will only display currently associated products. Press the Reset Filter button to display all products, associated or not, which belong to the same Attribute Set (a Simple Product must belong to the same Attribute Set as the Configurable Product in

order for you to be able to associate it). Select the checkbox of all products you wish to associate. The product list displays certain pertinent information about the Simple Products. To the right of the Inventory column will be a column for each configurable attribute, which you selected in step 7. The value entered for each attribute column will be that product's **Option**, which you selected when creating the Simple Product. In order for a Simple Product to display in this list, you must have selected an option for each configurable attribute.

Above the product list will display a list of all configurable attributes. Click and drag the orange arrow next to the attribute name in order to sort the attributes as they will appear on the front-end. The **Attribute Name** field will be prepopulated with the **Label** you used when creating the attribute, however it can be changed here so that it displays differently in the front-end. Below each attribute will list all the options that exist for associated products. Each time you associate a new product with a unique option, the option will add to this list. For each option, you can enter a positive or negative **Price**, which will add or subtract (respectively) from the price of the configurable product, as either a **Fixed** amount or a **Percentage** of the Configurable Product price.

The screenshot shows a software interface for managing product attributes and associated products. At the top, there's a header bar with a 'Create Simple Associated Product' button and a 'Create Empty' button. Below this is a section titled 'Super product attributes configuration' containing two attribute groups: 'Color' and 'Button Count'. Each group has an 'Attribute Name' dropdown set to its respective label ('Color' and 'Button Count') and two options listed with their prices and price types (Fixed or Percentage). A note at the top of this section says 'Price values for options should be specified in system base currency.' Below this is a table listing four products. The table has columns for checkboxes, ID, Name, Attrib. Set Name, SKU, Price (with 'From:' and 'To:' filters), Inventory, Color, Button Count, and Action (with 'Edit' links). The products listed are: 4. Black Suit Jacket (SKU: black_jacket_1, Price: \$299.99, In Stock, Black, Three), 5. Black Suit Jacket (SKU: black_jacket_2, Price: \$309.99, In Stock, Black, Four), 6. Navy Suit Jacket (SKU: navy_jacket_1, Price: \$304.99, In Stock, Navy, Three), and 7. Navy Suit Jacket (SKU: navy_jacket_2, Price: \$314.99, In Stock, Navy, Four).

	ID	Name	Attrib. Set Name	SKU	Price	Inventory	Color	Button Count	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	Black Suit Jacket	Suit Jacket	black_jacket_1	\$ 299.99 From: <input type="text"/> To: <input type="text"/>	In Stock	Black	Three	Edit
<input type="checkbox"/>	5	Black Suit Jacket	Suit Jacket	black_jacket_2	\$ 309.99 From: <input type="text"/> To: <input type="text"/>	In Stock	Black	Four	Edit
<input type="checkbox"/>	6	Navy Suit Jacket	Suit Jacket	navy_jacket_1	\$ 304.99 From: <input type="text"/> To: <input type="text"/>	In Stock	Navy	Three	Edit
<input type="checkbox"/>	7	Navy Suit Jacket	Suit Jacket	navy_jacket_2	\$ 314.99 From: <input type="text"/> To: <input type="text"/>	In Stock	Navy	Four	Edit

If you have not already created all of the Simple Products you wish to associate to this Configurable Product, you will have the option to create Simple Products in this tab. Above the list of configurable attributes is the **Create Simple Associated**

Product section. This contains a button called **Create Empty**. Clicking this button will generate a pop-up window identical to the New Product page. All of the fields are empty (hence the name of the button), and you will be required to enter values for all configurable attributes (so that this Simple Product can be associated to the Configurable Product). When you click **Save**, Magento will create a Simple Product, associated to the same Attribute Set as the Configurable product, and Magento will automatically associate the Simple Product to the Configurable Product (you will see this update in the product list at the bottom of the Associated Products tab).

In the front-end, it will look like this:



These are all of the options which appear when creating a new Configurable Product. If you press **Save And Continue Edit**, you will see two new options in the Associated Products tab (along with the three new tabs in the left column that were mentioned in the Simple Product Section). In the Create Simple Associated Product section, there is a new button called **Copy From Configurable**. This is similar to the Create Empty button, except that it will prepopulate many of the Simple Product fields with the corresponding fields from the Configurable Product. Many of the fields, however, either must be unique to each product, or are not applicable to the Configurable Product, and must be entered manually. These include SKU, Weight, all configurable attributes, and all Inventory information. Clicking Save will automatically associate the Simple Product to the Configurable Product just as with the Create Empty feature.

The second new option available is **Quick simple product creation** section. This section includes only some of the attribute fields, all of which are mandatory. In the Name and SKU fields, there is an **Autogenerate** checkbox. If these are selected, Magento will use the Name and SKU of the Configurable Product to

create a new Name and SKU for the Simple Product. It will be in the format [Name/SKU]-[configurable attribute 1]-[configurable attribute 2] and so on. When you click **Quick Create**, the Simple Product will be created, with all of the attribute information not listed in this section copied from the Configurable Product, and it will automatically associate to the Configurable Product just as with the Create Empty feature.

The screenshot shows the 'Create Simple Associated Product' interface. At the top, there are two buttons: 'Create Empty' and 'Copy From Configurable'. Below them is a section titled 'Quick simple product creation' containing the following fields:

- Name ***: Suit Jacket [STORE VIEW]
- SKU ***: suit_jacket [GLOBAL]
- Weight ***: [GLOBAL]
- Status ***: -- Please Select -- [WEBSITE]
- Visibility ***: -- Please Select -- [STORE VIEW]
- Color ***: [dropdown menu]
- Button Count ***: [dropdown menu]
- Qty ***: 0
- Stock Availability**: In Stock [dropdown menu]

At the bottom of the form is a large orange 'Quick Create' button.

When you have completed all of your edits, press Save. You have now created a Configurable Product.

Creating a Grouped Product

1. Like a configurable product, a Grouped Product is not useful unless there are simple products which can be associated to it. Therefore, the first step in creating a Grouped Product is to create two or more simple products that can be purchased together as part of the group.
2. To create a Grouped Product, navigate to Catalog > Manage Products.
3. In the top right corner, click **Add Product**.
4. Select an Attribute Set. Select **Default** if you haven't created any attribute sets. This will determine what product data you can enter. You can refer back to the previous section for more information about managing Attribute Sets.
5. Select **Grouped Product**.
6. Press **Continue**.

7. Enter all product information. This is similar to entering the product information for a Simple Product, with four major differences.

Weight

This is the same process as a Configurable Product. When a customer purchases a Grouped Product, they are not actually purchasing this product, but rather one of the associated Simple Products. Therefore, there is no weight for a Grouped Product, because the weight depends on that of each Simple Product individually.

Prices

Unlike Simple or Configurable Products, Grouped Products do not have their own prices. Despite being displayed on the same page, each Simple Product adds to the cart as a separate item. There are no prices that are applied to the items as a group. Therefore, there is no Prices tab for Grouped Products. If you want to give a discount when your customer purchases multiple products within a Grouped Product, you can set up a Shopping Cart Price Rule for this. There is more information about Shopping Cart Price Rules in [Chapter 5: Promotions, Marketing and Content Pages](#).

Inventory

Just like Weight, the stock of the individual Simple Products determine the stock of the Grouped Product. The Stock Availability works like that of a Configurable Product. If you select In Stock, it will display as In Stock on the front-end, but each Simple Product will only be purchasable if that Simple Product is In Stock. If your customer attempts to add one or more of the Out of Stock products to their cart, they will receive a message saying “This product is currently out of stock.” If you select Out of Stock, the Grouped Product will display as Out of Stock on the front-end, and will not be available to add to the cart, regardless of the Stock Availability of each Simple Product.

Associated Products

This is much simpler than associating products to a Configurable Product. Grouped Products do not need to be in the same attribute set as their associated products, so there is no attribute functionality tied in with creating Grouped Products. You can associate any product to a Grouped Product in this tab by

checking it. When checked, two fields unlock: **Default Qty** and **Position**.

	ID	Name	SKU	Price	Default Qty	Position
Any		black		From: <input type="text"/> To: <input type="text"/>	From: <input type="text"/> To: <input type="text"/>	From: <input type="text"/> To: <input type="text"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	11	Black Vest	black_vest_1	\$ 59.99	1	3
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	10	Black Pants	black_pants_1	\$ 99.99	1	2
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	4	Black Suit Jacket	black_jacket_1	\$ 299.99	1	1

Control the sort order of the items in the Position field. As with all sort orders in Magento, the product with the lowest number will have the highest position on the page. You can also enter a Default Quantity which will be a pre-populated value in the front-end quantity box.



Three-Piece Suit
[Be the first to review this product](#)
[Sign up for price alert](#)

Product Name	Price	Qty
Black Suit Jacket	\$ 299.99	1
Black Pants	\$ 99.99	1
Black Vest	\$ 59.99	1

Availability: In stock.

[Add to Cart](#) OR [Add to Wishlist](#)

Quick Overview
Still wearing that leisure suit that you wore to your cousin's wedding in 1978? Step into style, and the 21st century, with this designer three-piece suit.

MORE VIEWS

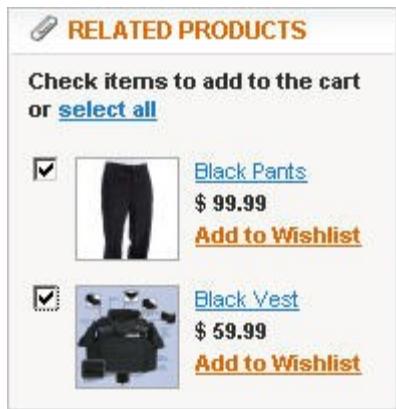


When you have completed all of your edits, press Save. You have now created a Grouped Product.

Related Products, Up-sells, Cross-sells

There are three types of product relations in Magento: **Related Products**, **Up-sells** and **Cross-sells**. Shown on a product's page, Related Products are meant to be purchased *in addition* to the item the customer is viewing. They will appear in a Related Products menu at the top of the right column. Simple Products will

have checkboxes, by which the customer can add them to their Shopping Cart. When they add the main product to their cart, all checked Related Products will be added as well.



Configurable and Grouped Products will not contain this checkbox, because the user must specify the settings of these products before adding them to the cart. Also shown on a product's page, Up-sells are items that customers would ideally buy *instead* of the product they're viewing. These may be better quality, produce a higher profit-margin, be more popular, etc. They will appear in a section labeled **You may also be interested in the following product(s)**, which displays beneath the **Additional Information** section. The Up-sells will display with a link to that product's page, navigating the customer away from the product which they are currently viewing.

A screenshot of an 'Up-sell' section. The title is 'You may also be interested in the following product(s)'. It shows three dark suits with blue ties on mannequins. The first item is 'A Jacket that's way better than the jacket you are looking at now' (\$399.99). The second is 'Another Jacket that's better' (\$499.99). The third is 'Better yet again' (\$599.99).

Shown in the shopping cart, Cross-sells act a bit like impulse buys, such as magazines and candy at the cash register in grocery stores. Usually, they are

items that a customer who is buying the product in question might enjoy. If there are multiple items in the Shopping Cart, each with their own Cross-sells, the Cross-sells will rotate each time the Shopping Cart is refreshed.

Based on your selection, you may be interested in the following items:



Impulse Buy #1

\$ 0.99

[Add to Cart](#)

[Add to Wishlist](#)

[Add to Compare](#)



Impulse Buy #2

\$ 4.99

[Add to Cart](#)

[Add to Wishlist](#)

[Add to Compare](#)

Great For:

- Moving Stock
- Increasing the Sales of Accessory and High-End Items

Related Products, Up-sells, and Cross-Sells are all associated to a product in the same manner. Navigate to Catalog > Manage Products. Locate the product to which you wish to associate the Related Product/Up-Sell/Cross-sell, and click Edit. Click on the Related Products/Up-Sells/Cross-sells tab in the left column.

1. From the products grid that appears, check any products to mark as Related Products/Up-Sells/Cross-sells. Click **Reset Filter** to see all products.
2. Once a product has been checked, the **Position** field opens up. This determines the sort order of the Related Products/Up-Sells/Cross-sells in the product's page/Shopping Cart. *Note: For Cross-sells, the Position only applies if there is one item in the cart. When there are multiple items, the Cross-sells will rotate, and not adhere to the Position.*
3. Click **Save**.

	ID	Name	Type	Attrib. Set Name	Status	Visibility	SKU	Price	Position
Any								From:	From:
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	11	Black Vest	Simple Product	Default	Enabled	Catalog, Search	black_vest_1	\$ 59.99	2
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	10	Black Pants	Simple Product	Default	Enabled	Catalog, Search	black_pants_1	\$ 99.99	1

Product Comparisons

One property of Magento attributes is the ability to make them **Comparable on Front-end**. If at least one attribute is in a product is Comparable on Front-end, customers will be able to add this product to their Compare Products menu. Both System and Simple Attributes can be set to Comparable. Once added to the Compare Products menu, customers will be able to view the products side by side and make an educated shopping decision. This is very powerful; if customers desire, they can compare a chair, a television, and a pair of running shoes. These types of products may not have very many attributes in common (probably only attributes such as SKU, Price, and Product Name), but that is the power of this feature: to allow your customers to customize their shopping experience. There is more information about Product Comparisons in [Chapter 5: Promotions, Marketing and Content Pages](#).

Great For

- Increasing Customer Convenience
- Stores with a Variety of Products
- Increasing Conversions

You can control which data shows in Product Comparisons. Each product attribute has a flag called Comparable on Front-end, which can be set to Yes or No. To choose this:

1. Navigate to Catalog > Attributes > Manage Attributes.
2. In the grid, find the attribute you want to edit. *Hint: Change the last column Comparable to Yes or No to see all attributes that can appear in the product comparison chart.*
3. Click the attribute to edit it.
4. Change the drop-down Comparable on Front-end to Yes or No.
5. Click **Save Attribute**.

Layered Navigation

A customer browsing your site needs to find the products that interest them as fast as possible. To prevent them from frustrating experience of encountering a category containing 60 products spread across multiple pages, give them the option to filter products based on their interests. With layered navigation, customers can search by any attribute that you have designated as filterable, more easily showing customers what they want and raising conversions.

Great For

- Stores with a variety of products
- Giving customers a more individualized experience
- Increasing Conversions

The Layered Navigation menu actually consists of two parts: Category filters and

The screenshot shows a layered navigation sidebar for the 'Cameras' category. At the top, it displays the breadcrumb path: Home / Electronics / Cameras. Below this is a title bar labeled 'SHOP BY' and 'SHOPPING OPTIONS'. The menu is organized into sections: 'CATEGORY', 'PRICE', 'COLOR', 'MANUFACTURER', and 'MEGAPIXELS'. Each section contains a list of filterable attributes with their respective counts in parentheses.

Section	Attribute	Count
CATEGORY	Accessories	(3)
	Digital Cameras	(5)
PRICE	\$ 0.00 - \$ 100.00	(4)
	\$ 100.00 - \$ 200.00	(2)
	\$ 300.00 - \$ 400.00	(1)
	\$ 500.00 - \$ 600.00	(1)
COLOR	Black	(1)
	Silver	(4)
MANUFACTURER	Argus	(1)
	Canon	(2)
	Kodak	(1)
	Olympus	(1)
MEGAPIXELS	5	(2)
	7	(1)
	8	(2)

Attribute filters.

- Category navigation - If a category contains child categories, the child categories will automatically display in the Layered Navigation menu. Each child category will display as a link, along with the number of products associated to that category in parentheses. Only the direct child categories will display. Child of child categories will not display.
- Attribute filters - In order for the attribute filter to display in the Layered Navigation menu, a category must be an Anchor category (refer back to the section about categories). For Anchored categories, all filterable attributes will have a section in the Layered Navigation menu, with a link for each value. Clicking on any of these values will filter the results on the category page to display only those products which match the selected value (refer back to the section about attributes for more information about filterable attributes). There

will be one link for each existing value. There is one exception to this, however. Price, which is a System Attribute, is by default configured to be a filterable attribute (this can, of course, be changed). Rather than having a separate link for every single price, the price filter values will display as various price ranges. Magento will automatically set the size of the ranges based on the prices of the products in that category (each range will be of equal size), and there will be a maximum of ten ranges.

Assigning Designs at the product level

You can control the look of each product page individually in from the Design tab in the product page. It is very similar to the individual design options for categories. If your product page has a design separate from the category page to which it is associated, then the product level design will supersede the category level design.

- Select the design you want from the **Custom Design** drop-down. Magento comes with several different design options out of the box. If you leave this drop-down blank, it will automatically use the **Current package name** design. This can be edited by navigating to System > Configuration and clicking the Design tab. Enter the name of the design you want in the Current package name field, and this design will apply to all products for which you do not specify a different design.
- With the **Active From** and **Active To** fields, you can select a time frame in which the category will automatically switch to a design, and then switch back to the blank option when the time frame ends. This is perfect for the holidays, so that you can create a holiday design for your pages, and then have your site automatically switch back to the normal design whenever you want, without having to remember to do it yourself.
- The **Custom Layout Update** is essentially a static block, with a few differences.
 - Rather than HTML, the structure must be in XML format.
 - The Update will display on the product page, below the product information, whereas a static block will only display on a category page.
 - The Update will display on the page only during the dates specified in the Active date range.

Stock Management

Your ability to manage the details of your products' inventory is more flexible than ever with Magento's Inventory Management System. You will have the ability to control not only the quantity and availability, but also the backorder capabilities and the maximum and minimum quantities the consumer is allowed to purchase. Additionally, you can create the settings system-wide, or customize them individually for each product.

Creating stock management default options

1. Navigate to System > Configuration, and click on the Inventory tab in the left column.

Stock Options	
Minimum Qty Allowed in Shopping Cart	1
Notify for Quantity Below	5
Minimum Qty for Items' Status to be In Stock	20
Maximum Qty Allowed in Shopping Cart	10000
Decrease Stock When Order is Placed	Yes
Backorders	<ul style="list-style-type: none">No BackordersNo BackordersAllow Qty Below 0Allow Qty Below 0 and Notify Customer

1. Enter **Minimum Qty Allowed in Shopping Cart**. This value requires the customer to purchase a minimum amount of each product in an order.
2. Enter **Notify for Quantity Below**. When a stock of any product goes below this level, Magento will automatically notify you via RSS Feed. This ability works in conjunction with the Decrease Stock When Order is Placed drop-down below, because Magento cannot notify you of a low stock unless you also enable it to keep track of stock reduction. In this field, enter the quantity level at which Magento will send a notification. In order to set up the RSS feed, navigate to Catalog > Manage Products, and click the **Notify Low Stock RSS** link at the top of the page. You will be prompted to enter your User Name and Password. These are the same that you use to access the Magento admin panel. You will be redirected to the RSS page, where you can select which reader you would like to use for receiving this feed.

3. Enter **Minimum Qty for Items' Status to be In Stock**. This value will determine at which quantity the availability of the item will switch from In Stock to Out of Stock. If you set this value to 20, you will always guarantee that you have at least 20 items in stock.
4. Enter **Maximum Qty Allowed in Shopping Cart**. This value limits the amount of each product the customer is allowed to purchase in a single order.
5. Select **Decrease Stock When Order is Placed** status.
 - If you select Yes, the product's quantity will automatically decrease when an order is placed.
 - If you select No, the product's quantity will not automatically decrease, and it can only be edited manually.
6. Select **Backorders** status.
 - If you select **No Backorders**, the customer will not be allowed to purchase more quantity than is available.
 - If you select **Allow Qty Below 0**, the customer will be allowed to purchase more quantity than is available, but they will not be notified that some of the quantity has been put on backorder.
 - If you select **Allow Qty Below 0 and Notify Customer**, the customer will be allowed to purchase more quantity than is available, and they will be notified when they are adding the item to the cart that the unavailable quantity has been put on backorder.
7. Click **Save**. You have now created the inventory characteristic for all products in your system.

Creating stock management on the product level

To customize the inventory settings for an individual product, whether creating a new product or editing an existing product, navigate to Catalog > Manage Products, and click the Inventory tab in the left column of the product's page. *Note: These settings only exist for Simple Products. Because Configurable and Grouped Products are essentially just a way to display Simple Products, the inventory settings of the Configurable and Grouped Products are completely dependent upon those of the associated Simple Products. Therefore, for Configurable and Grouped Products, only the Stock Availability will be present in the Inventory tab, because this*

is actually a display setting and not related to the actual inventory of the product.

Inventory

Qty*	<input type="text" value="97"/> [GLOBAL]
Minimum Qty for Item's Status to be Out of Stock	<input type="text" value="0"/> [GLOBAL] <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use Config Settings
Minimum Qty Allowed in Shopping Cart	<input type="text" value="0"/> [GLOBAL] <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use Config Settings
Maximum Qty Allowed in Shopping Cart	<input type="text" value="0"/> [GLOBAL] <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use Config Settings
Qty Uses Decimals	<input type="text" value="No"/> [GLOBAL]
Backorders	<input type="text" value="Allow Qty Below 0 and Notify Customer"/> [GLOBAL] <input type="checkbox"/> Use Config Settings
Notify for Quantity Below	<input type="text" value="0"/> [GLOBAL] <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use Config Settings
Stock Availability	<input type="text" value="In Stock"/> [GLOBAL]

1. Enter **Qty**, or quantity. This is a required field.
2. Enter **Minimum Qty for Items' Status to be In Stock** or click the **Use Config Settings** checkbox to use the value you input in the Inventory System Configuration. Clicking the checkbox will deactivate the text field and it will not be editable.
3. Enter **Minimum Qty Allowed in Shopping Cart** or click the checkbox.
4. Enter **Maximum Qty Allowed in Shopping Cart** or click the checkbox.
5. Select **Qty Uses Decimals** status.
 - If you select Yes, the customer can enter a fraction of a whole number into the quantity field in the shopping cart. This is beneficial if items are being sold in alternative units such as weight or length.
 - If you select No, the customer can only purchase quantities in whole numbers.
6. Select **Backorders** status, or click the checkbox.
7. Select **Notify for Quantity Below**, or click the checkbox.
8. Select **Stock Availability**. You can designate the product to be **Out of Stock** even if you have stock remaining for the product, and it will display as such in the front-end. This means that your customers will not be able to add the product to their carts, but they can add it to their wishlists. If there is no stock remaining for the product, you do not need to manually switch this to Out of Stock. Magento will automatically update the front-end accordingly, unless you allow for Backorders, in which case the product will display normally and customers will still be able to add quantity to their carts.
9. Click **Save**. You have now customized the inventory characteristics for this product.

Batch Updates

Products can be imported to and exported from the admin using the Magento DataFlow engine. However, in this section we will concentrate on making batch updates to products in the admin. This feature saves you time by allowing you to change the attributes of multiple products at the same time. There is similar functionality in several other places in the Magento admin, from customers to Orders. Each will be discussed in the appropriate chapter.

1. In the admin, navigate to Catalog > Manage Products.
2. Select the products to which you would like to make updates. At the top of the products list, you have the option to **Select All** products or **Select Visible** products (products currently displaying on the page). Or, you can simply check the checkboxes of each product to which you wish to make updates individually. You can see the number of **items selected** at the top of the products list, and it will update each time a checkbox is checked or unchecked.



The screenshot shows the Magento Admin Product Grid. At the top, there are filters for 'Name' set to 'black', and dropdowns for 'Type' (Simple Product), 'Attrib. Set Name' (Default), and 'SKU'. Below these are search fields for 'Price From', 'Price To', 'Qty From', 'Qty To', and a 'Visibility' dropdown set to 'In: USD'. On the right, there's a 'Actions' dropdown menu with options: 'Delete', 'Change status', and 'Update attributes' (which is highlighted in blue). The main grid lists three products: 'Black Vest' (ID 11), 'Black Pants' (ID 10), and 'Black Suit Jacket' (ID 4). Each row has a checkbox in the first column, indicating they are selected. The columns include ID, Name, Type, Attrb. Set Name, SKU, Price, Qty, Visibility, Status, Main Website, and Action (with edit icons).

Product Grid										Action
Select All		Unselect All		Select Visible		Unselect Visible		3 items selected		Action
ID	Name	Type	Attrib. Set Name	SKU	Price	Qty	Visibility	Status	Main Website	Action
11	Black Vest	Simple Product	Default	black Vest_1	\$ 59.99	342	Catalog, Search	Enabled	Main Website	
10	Black Pants	Simple Product	Default	black pants_1	\$ 99.99	235	Catalog, Search	Enabled	Main Website	
4	Black Suit Jacket	Simple Product	But Jacket	black jacket_1	\$ 299.99	292	Catalog, Search	Enabled	Main Website	

3. When you have all the desired products selected, chose your preferred Action from the drop-down menu, also at the top of the products list.
 - **Delete** - This will delete the selected products from your catalog when you press **Submit**.
 - **Change Status** - Selecting this will produce a **Status** drop-down menu to the right, where you can choose to either **Enable** or **Disable** the selected products. The status will change when you press Submit.
 - **Update attributes** - When you press Submit, you will be redirected to the Update attributes page. The **Attributes** tab displays many of the system attributes from the General, Prices, Meta Information, Images, and Design tabs in a product page. It

also includes the simple attributes that are shared by all of the items selected. You will not have the option to edit SKU or URL Key, or any other attribute that must be unique per product. The **Inventory** tab displays the same fields that are displayed in the Inventory tab for an individual product. The **Websites** tab is also very similar to that of an individual product, however there will be one section for adding the products to the Websites, and once section for removing the products from the Websites. In the top left corner is the Choose Store View drop-down, so that you can choose to make your updates specific to a certain Store View. As always, Global and Website level attributes cannot differ between Store Views. At first, all the of the attribute fields are inactive, and you must click the **Change** checkbox next to each field in order to activate it and make an edit. The fields will all be blank, even if all the selected products share the same value for a given attribute. This can be useful for many scenarios. For example, if you have several products with the same special price, ending in one week, you can choose to extend the Special Price To Date for all the products at one time. Simply check the checkbox for this field, enter the new date on which you wish the special to end, and click **Save**.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Change	[WEBSITE]
Special Price From Date	<input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/>	Change [WEBSITE]
Special Price	<input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/>	Change [WEBSITE]
	<input type="checkbox"/> Change [USD]	
Special Price To Date	<input type="text"/> 04/30/08 <input type="checkbox"/>	Change [WEBSITE]
Status *	<input type="text"/> Please Select <input type="checkbox"/>	Change [WEBSITE]

All of the products will update and you will be redirected back to the products list. *Tip: Be careful to only check the attributes which you wish you change. If you select an attribute and leave it blank, it will erase the existing value of the attribute when you save.*

URL Rewrites

The URL Rewrite Management page is a SEF tool that you can apply to the URLs of your category and product pages. Rather than having all your URLs in the default format, which uses category and product IDs, you can use this feature to create a more descriptive URL, making it easier for search engines to find your pages. Whenever a new category or product is created, a new entry will be added to this list, one for each existing store view.

Configuration Settings

Before using this feature, there are two important settings that you must configure. Navigate to System > Configuration and select the Web tab from the left column.

- **Add Store Code toUrls** - This determines whether the store ID (in addition to the category ID or product ID) will be used in the URLs for your site. If you are managing multiple stores, this will create a separate URL rewrite for each store.
- **Use Web Server Rewrites** - This controls whether Magento will automatically generate URL rewrites. To access the list of existing rewrites, this must be set to Yes.

Editing URL Rewrites

Now you are ready to view the list of URL rewrites. To access this list, navigate to Catalog > Manage Url Rewrites in the admin. Click Edit next to one of the rewrites and you will be able to change some of the information.

General Information	
Type *	System
Store *	Burmese
ID Path *	product/15
Target Path *	catalog/product/view/id/15
Request Path *	bamboo-barcelona-platform-bed.html
Redirect	Yes
Description	

- **Type** - For automatically created rewrites, this value will be System. For manually created rewrites, this value will be Custom. Neither can be changed.
- **Store** - The name of the store view to which the rewrite directs. Because a separate rewrite is created for each existing store view, this too can not be changed.
- **ID Path** - Will display in the format of {Type}/{ID#}. If the Type is System, it will further be specified as either category or product. For products, there may also be an additional /{associated category ID#} following the standard format. This can not be changed.
- **Target Path** - This is the actual URL that points to the page. It is a relative path, automatically generated in a certain format, and can not be changed.
- **Request Path** - This is the SEF URL that you can edit. It will be automatically generated with the name that you specified for the category or product when it was created. If it is a product, it may also include the associated category, or a suffix (such as .html), if you have enabled those features in the Catalog Configuration (refer back to the [beginning of this chapter](#) for more information about this). However, you can edit this to whatever format you desire. This is the same field that you see in an individual product or category page called **URL key**. To find this field, navigate to Catalog > Manage Products/Categories and edit the desired product/category. Whether you choose to edit the value in the URL Rewrite Management page, or

the individual product/category page, it makes no difference. Note: The Request Path must be unique for each rewrite.

- **Redirect** - If you select Yes, the URL will switch to the Target Path when the Request Path is entered in the address bar. If you select No, the URL will remain in the format of the Request Path.
- **Description** - This is for internal purposes.

When you have completed making edits, click **Save Url**.

Creating URL Rewrites

You can also create New Url Rewrites. Because Category and Product pages automatically generate a rewrite when they are created, this is most useful for adding multiple Request Paths that point to the same Target Path. Additionally, you can create rewrites that point to CMS landing pages, such as a FAQ page.

1. On the Manage Url Rewrites page, click **Add Url Rewrite**.
2. Select the Type



- **Category** - If you select Category, you will then be required to select the category for which you wish to create the rewrite from the category tree. Select the checkbox of the desired category. You will then be redirected to the General Information page where you enter the relevant information. You will have the ability to choose the Store from a drop-down. And just like when editing an existing rewrite, you can make changes to the Request Path (which will be autopopulated with the category name), Redirect and Description. When you are finished, click Save Url.
- **Product** - If you select Product, you will first be required to select the product for which you wish to create the rewrite from the product list, and then be redirected to the category tree where you will be required to select the category to which the product is associated. Then, you will be redirected to the General Information page where you enter the relevant information. The name of the product will be displayed at the top as a link to the product's information page. You will have the ability to choose the store from a drop-down. And just like when editing an existing rewrite, you can make changes to the Request Path (which will be autopopulated with the

product name and associated category name), Redirect and Description. When you are finished, click Save Url.

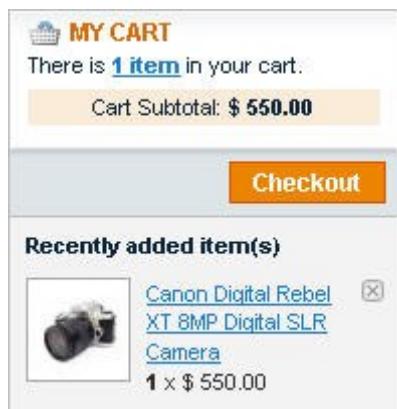
- **Custom** - If you select Custom, you will be redirected immediately to the General Information Page. As with the Categories and Products, you will be able to edit the Store, Request Path, Redirect, and Description. However, because you cannot select Target Path from a list of Categories or Products, you will have to enter the ID Path and Target Path manually, to point to the desired CMS landing page. Just as with Categories and Products, the Request Path field exists in an individual CMS page. Here, it is called **SEF URL Identifier**, and you can find it by navigating to CMS > Manage Pages and clicking on the desired CMS page. When you are finished, click Save Url.

Chapter 4: Get Ready for Selling

Checkout Process

In this chapter we will discuss the details of the checkout process, including localization, Taxes, Shipping Methods, and Payment Methods. But before describing each aspect of the checkout process in depth, let's take a moment to discuss the checkout process as a whole, along with some of the basic checkout configuration settings. This way, you will have a better understanding of how localization, Taxes, Shipping, and Payment fit into the checkout process, giving each section a bit more context.

The process first begins when your customer adds a product to their cart. They can be redirected to the cart each time they add a product, or remain on the product page, only to be directed to the cart if they click one of the various shopping cart links. You can configure this setting by navigating to System > Configuration, clicking on the Checkout tab in the left column, and choose your preference from the **After adding a product redirect to shopping cart** drop-down. Magento automatically saves the contents of your customers' shopping carts, but you can limit the amount of time a product will remain in the cart by entering the limit, in days, in the **Quote Lifetime** field. If your customer continues shopping, they will have a quick view of the shopping cart in the right column of all category, product and CMS pages that include the right column (which you can specify in the design settings for each page individually).



At the top of the cart view will be a summary of the quantity of items in the cart. This can display either the number of different products (line items) or the total quantity of each line item. You can specify this setting in the **Display Cart Summary** drop-down.

When your customers arrive to the shopping cart, they will see each product listed in a separate row. Each product here is referred to as a line item. For each line item, your customers have the option to add quantity to it, or remove it from the cart altogether, and this can be done at any time. The image that displays for each line item

is the Thumbnail image that you selected for each product. For Grouped and Configurable products, however, you have the option to use the Thumbnail of the Grouped or Configurable product, or the Thumbnail of the associated Simple Product. This is designated in the **Grouped product image** and **Configurable product image** drop-downs, respectively. To use the Thumbnail of the Grouped/Configurable Product, select **Parent Product Thumbnail**. To use the Thumbnail of the associated Simple Product, select **Product Thumbnail itself**. In the cart there is also a link to **Continue Shopping**, so that your customers can add more products to the cart. If they have a coupon code which will offer them a discount, they must enter it in the Shopping Cart, in the **Discount Codes** field (there is more information about Shopping Cart Price Rules in [Chapter 5: Promotions, Marketing and Content Pages](#)), in order for it to be applied during Checkout.



When they click the **Apply Coupon** button, the coupon will be applied to the cart and appear in the checkout totals in the bottom right corner. Your customers can also receive Shipping and Tax estimates prior to the checkout process. They must enter their Country, State/Province, and Zip/Postal Code in the **Estimate Shipping and Tax** field, and click **Get a Quote**. The available shipping rates will appear directly below.

ESTIMATE SHIPPING AND TAX

Enter your destination to get a shipping estimate.

Country

State/Province

City

Zip/Postal Code

Get a Quote

DHL

- Express - \$ 46.90
- Next Afternoon - \$ 40.57
- Second Day Service - \$ 21.02
- Ground - \$ 6.58

Flat Rate

- Fixed - \$ 10.00

Update Total

Your customers can then click the **Update Total** button, and the selected shipping rate, along with the tax (if applicable) will add to the checkout totals in the bottom right corner. Your customers can change shipping rates at any time, and refresh the checkout totals by clicking the Update Total button again. The checkout totals includes the Subtotal, Discount, Shipping, Tax, and Grand Total.



You can configure the order of these amounts by navigating to System > Configuration, clicking on the Sales tab in the left column, and entering the sort orders in the **Checkout totals sort order** section.

The tax will vary depending on the tax settings you specify. Navigate to System > Configuration, and click on the Sales tab in the left column. Here, you can designate whether to **Apply Tax after Discount**. If you select Yes, the tax will calculate as a percentage of the discounted price rather than the Subtotal. You can also choose the **Tax Class for Shipping**, if you want to charge tax on the shipping costs (more on this in the Taxes section below). Lastly, you can calculate the **Tax Based On** the customers' billing or shipping address, or the shipping origin (the address of your store or warehouse, which you can define in the Shipping Settings tab). If you choose to base tax on the shipping origin, which is a fixed address that you must configure, your tax rates will be fixed, and you will then have the option to set **Catalog prices include tax** to Yes. If you do, Magento will subtract sales tax from the product price you entered in the catalog. For example, you have a product listed for \$110.00, and the tax rate is 10%. Instead of the customer being charged 10% on top of the \$110.00, and paying \$121.00 total, they will only pay \$110.00 total. The actual product price will therefore be \$100.00, and the other \$10.00 will be used as the sales tax (\$10.00 is 10% of \$100.00). The \$100.00 price will be shown in the shopping cart as the **Unit Price (Excl. Tax)**, or the price excluding tax, so your customers can see that the tax was already included in the catalog price they saw in your site.

Unit Price	Qty	Subtotal
\$ 110.00	<input type="text" value="1"/>	\$ 110.00
Update Shopping Cart		
Subtotal \$ 110.00 Tax \$ 11.00 Grand Total \$ 121.00		
Proceed to Checkout		

Tax not included in catalog price

Unit Price (Excl. Tax)	Qty	Subtotal (Excl. Tax)
\$ 100.00	<input type="text" value="1"/>	\$ 100.00
Update Shopping Cart		
Subtotal \$ 100.00 Tax \$ 10.00 Grand Total \$ 110.00		
Proceed to Checkout		

Tax included in catalog price

When your customers have added all the items they want to purchase to the cart, they will click the **Proceed to Checkout** button in the cart. There is also a **Checkout** button in the Shopping Cart quick view, and a **Checkout** link in the page header at all times (if you have PayPal or Google Checkout enabled, separate checkout buttons

will appear for these options). If they are not already logged in, they will have three options: **Checkout as Guest**, **Register**, and **LOGIN**.

The screenshot shows the 'Checkout method' tab of the Magento one-page checkout. On the left, there are two sections: 'CHECKOUT AS A GUEST OR REGISTER' and 'LOGIN'. The 'REGISTER' section contains radio buttons for 'Checkout as Guest' (selected) and 'Register'. Below this is a bolded 'Register and save time!' section with a list of benefits: 'Fast and easy check out' and 'Easy access to your order history and status'. The 'LOGIN' section contains a question 'Already registered?' followed by a note 'Please log in below:' and fields for 'Email Address' and 'Password'. At the bottom right of the page, there is a note '* Required Fields' and three buttons: 'Continue' (orange), 'Forgot your password?' (blue), and 'Login' (orange).

CHECKOUT AS A GUEST OR REGISTER		LOGIN
Register with us for future convenience:		Already registered? Please log in below:
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Checkout as Guest		Email Address *
<input type="radio"/> Register		Password *
Register and save time!		
Register with us for future convenience:		
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Fast and easy check out• Easy access to your order history and status		
* Required Fields		
Continue		Forgot your password?
		Login

If they choose to Checkout as Guest, they will enter all of the necessary order information, however an account will not be created for them when the checkout is complete. You can disable guest checkout by navigating to System > Configuration, clicking the Checkout tab in the left column, and selecting No from the **Allow Guest Checkout** drop-down. If they choose to Register, they will enter all of the necessary order information, including a password, and an account will be created simultaneously when the checkout is complete. If they choose to LOGIN, they must first enter their Email Address and Password, which will retrieve all of their account information, and they will only be required to enter the necessary order information which is not currently saved (for example, if they do not already have any addresses saved to their account).

Regardless of which of these three options they choose, they will checkout using Magento's one-page checkout platform. This makes the checkout process easier than ever, with all the checkout information conveniently located on the same page, divided into separate tabs for better organization. The first tab includes the Billing Information (as well as name, email, and password, if needed), and the ability to select from different addresses and create new addresses. The second tab includes the Shipping Information, as well as the ability to change or add addresses. In the first tab, your customers have the option to specify that the shipping address will be the same as the billing address, in which case the second tab will be skipped altogether. The third tab will include the available shipping methods, as well as the option to add gift messages, if they are enabled. Gift messages can be applied to the order as a whole, or individually to each product. You can configure this by navigating to System > Configuration, and clicking the Sales tab in the left column. The **Allow Gift Messages on Order Level** drop-down controls whether one gift message can be placed for the whole order, and the **Allow Gift Messages for Order Items** drop-down controls whether one gift message can be placed for each product. You can choose to enable

both, or just one. In the Shipping Method tab, the Order Level gift message will have a **From** field, **To** field and a **Message** field. The Item Level gift message(s) will have the same fields, as well as an indication as to which product the gift message is associated. The From and To fields will autopopulate with the billing address name and shipping address name, respectively. The fourth tab will include the Payment Information. The fifth tab will include the Order Review, and the **Place Order** button, which completes the order.

Product Name	Price	Qty	Subtotal
Canon Digital Rebel XT 8MP Digital SLR Camera	\$ 550.00	1	\$ 550.00
			Subtotal \$ 550.00
			Discount (save10) \$ -55.00
			Shipping & Handling (DHL - Ground) \$ 6.58
			Tax \$ 45.92
			Grand Total \$ 547.50

Forgot an Item? [Edit Your Cart](#)

Place Order

As your customers proceed through checkout, the information from each tab will be update in the **Your Checkout Progress** menu in the right column.

Localization Settings

When you first installed Magento, you were required to select your localization settings. This includes you Locale, Timezone, and Default Currency. Just because these were configured during installation doesn't meant you don't have access to them any time you want. These can be reconfigured at any time.

Locale Settings

You can reconfigure your Timezone and Locale settings by navigating to System > Configuration, and clicking on the General tab. This page also contains other very important configuration settings, so let's take this opportunity to discuss them along with the discussion of the localization settings.

Countries options

- **Default country** - Any time a country drop-down is present, in the admin or the front-end, it will automatically be populated with the country selected from this list. The option you select here should be included in the Allow countries list below.

- **Allow countries** - Any time a country drop-down is present, only the options selected from this list will be available to select in the drop-down.

Locale options

- **Timezone** - Controls all settings related to time in your site, such as timestamps or automated processes.
- **Locale** - Controls the default language of your site.

Currency

The other localization setting – Currency – can be reconfigured in a different location. In addition to merely being able to select which currency will be your default currency, there are many other currency settings that you can configure at this time as well.

Currency Configuration

To configure the currency settings, navigate to System > Configuration, and select the Currency Setup tab in the left column.

Currencies Options

- **Allowed currencies** - Select from this list each currency with which you would like your customers to be able to place Orders. This can be unique for each website or store view. The currencies that display in this list are actually determined in another currency list. Navigate to System > Configuration, and select the System tab in the left column. In the Currency section, there is a list of **Installed Currencies**. This list contains many obsolete 20th century currencies in addition to the current ones. By default, only current currencies will be selected, and therefore only those currencies will display in the Allowed currencies list. However, you have the option to select the obsolete currencies, and add them to the Allowed currencies list. The Installed Currencies list, therefore, acts like a filter, so that the Allowed currencies list is not cluttered with obsolete currencies that most store owners will not use. If you select more than one currency from the Allowed currencies list (and define currency rates, which will be covered below), a **Select Your Currency** drop-down will appear on the category and product pages on the front-end, through which your customers can choose their preferred currency method.



- **Default display currency** - This is the currency that will be selected on the front-end when your customers first arrive to your website, before changing it in the Select Your Currency drop-down. If you are only allowing one currency in your site, this will be the same as the allowed currency. If you are allowing multiple currencies in your site, you can choose which of those currencies will be the default. Make sure that the Default display currency has been selected as an Allowed Currency.
- **Base currency** - This is the currency against which all other allowed currencies will be configured, based on the ratios established in the Manage Currency page (covered below). You can establish different Base Currencies per website (so long as the **Catalog Price Scope** in the Catalog tab is set to **Website**). Each website level Base Currency will have its own row in the Manage Currency page. While you can allow multiple currencies in which to display your product prices, this is the currency that will be used for payment transactions with online payment gateways (this is only if you have enabled one or more online payment methods in your Payment Methods configuration; there is more about this [later in the chapter](#)).

Import Settings

This section is to set up automatic updates of currency rates through an external currency rate provider. You can manually update the currency rates using an external currency rate provider in the Manage Currency page (covered below).

- **Enabled** - Select Yes to Enable automatic currency rate updates.
- **Service** - Select which external currency rate provider you with which you wish to update your rates. By default, Magento is configured to import rates from **Webservicex**.
- **Start Time** - Select the time of day (in 24 hour mode) at which you wish to update your rates.
- **Frequency** - Designate whether you want the rates to update Daily, Weekly, or Monthly.
- **Error Email Recipient** - Enter the email address to which emails will be sent in case an error occurs during the automatic update.
- **Error Email Sender** - Select the address from which the error notification email will be sent. For more information on how to configure these email addresses, refer to [Chapter 6: Customers](#).
- **Error Email Template** - Select the template which the error notification email will use. For more information on how to configure these templates, refer to [Chapter 6: Customers](#).

Currency Rates

These can be configured by navigating to System > Manage Currency Rates. This page contains a table of Base Currencies and Allowed Currencies, with the relative value of each compared to the Base Currency. Each Base Currency will have its own row, and each Allowed Currency will have its own column. When the row value and column value for a cell are the same (for example, where the US Dollars Base Currency and Allowed Currency intersect), the rate will be 1.0000. All other rates in the same row will be a ratio of this. You can enter the rates of the other currencies manually, or import them from an external currency rate provider in the **Import Service** drop-down. By default, Magento is configured to import rates from **Webservicex**. Select this from the drop-down, and click **Import**. The Allowed Currencies will populate with the most current conversion rates. If you had rates previously entered, they will now display underneath the field, as the **Old rate**. You can revert to these old rates by clicking **Reset**. When your currency rates are configured correctly, click **Save Currency Rates**.

Manage Currency Rates										Import Service	Webservicex	<input type="button" value="Import"/>	<input type="button" value="Reset"/>	<input type="button" value="Save Currency Rates"/>
	AUD	CAD	CNY	EUR	JPY	MNZ	UAH	USD						
EUR	1.6918 Old rate: 1.6878	1.6100 Old rate: 1.6005	11.1848 Old rate: 11.1382	1.0000	164.4422 Old rate: 163.8555	16.7881 Old rate: 16.7633	7.8451 Old rate: 7.8035	1.5994 Old rate: 1.5906						
USD	1.0578 Old rate: 1.0611	1.0066 Old rate: 1.0062	6.9930 Old rate: 7.0025	0.6252 Old rate: 0.6267	102.8000 Old rate: 103.0150	10.4955 Old rate: 10.5390	4.9050 Old rate: 4.9060	1.0000						

There are 2 base currencies (1 per Website) and 8 display currencies

YOUR CHECKOUT PROGRESS

[Billing Address](#) | [Edit](#)

Magento Commerce
Varien
11832 W. Pico Blvd
Los Angeles, 90064,
California
United States
T: 1-310-954-8012

[Shipping Address](#) | [Edit](#)

Magento Commerce
Varien
11832 W. Pico Blvd
Los Angeles, 90064,
California
United States
T: 1-310-954-8012

[Shipping Method](#) | [Edit](#)

DHL - Ground: \$ 6.58

[Payment Method](#) | [Edit](#)

Name on the Card: Magento
Credit Card Type: Visa
Credit Card Number:
3000-1111
Expiration Date: 01/2010

If you wish, Magento will automatically notify you via RSS Feed of the creation of all new Orders, whether created in front-end or the admin. In order to use this RSS feed, navigate to Sales > Orders, and click the **New Order RSS** link at the top of the page. You will be prompted to enter your User Name and Password. These are the same that you use to access the Magento admin panel. You will be redirected to the RSS page, where you can select which reader you would like to use for receiving this feed. This concludes the checkout process. Now, let's take a more detailed look at some of the aspects of the checkout process.

Taxes

Tax Rates

Magento allows full control over your store's Tax Rates, from a single statewide rate to rates per zip code. The proper term Tax Rate, as defined in Magento, is used to describe a set of up to five individual tax rates, which will be applied to different combinations of Customer Tax Classes and Product Tax Classes when you create your Tax Rules. These tax features will be discussed in more detail [later in the chapter](#). To define Tax Rates, navigate to Sales > Tax > Manage Tax Rates and select **Add New Tax Rate**.

- **Country** - First, select the country associated to this shipping rate. Magento locates the appropriate Tax Rate by matching the customer's shipping address country to the Tax Rate country. For example, if you select United States from this list, all customers whose shipping address country is United States will have their tax calculated based upon this Tax Rate.
- **State** - If the country has different tax rates in different states, you can specify the state using this drop-down. By default, an asterisk will be selected in the drop-down. This means the this Tax Rate will apply to all customers from the given country, regardless of the state. For most countries, the drop-down will be inactive, so that you will not be able to specify a state. There are six countries – Austria, Canada, Germany, Spain, Switzerland, and United States – which have options that can be selected from this drop-down. If you already created a Tax Rate for the United States, with an asterisk for the state, this will be the standard Tax Rate for the United States, and will apply to all customers whose shipping address is the United States. However, you can now create a new Tax Rate, and select California as the state. Now, all orders with a United States shipping country will use the standard Tax Rate, unless the shipping state is California, in which case it will use the specific Tax Rate. You can create a Tax Rate for each state that differs from the standard United States Tax Rate.
- **Zip/Post Code** - If the country or state has different tax rates in different zip codes, you can enter a zip code in this field. *Note: You can specify a zip code even if you have not specified a state.* By default, this field will contain an asterisk. This means that this Tax Rate will apply to all customers from the given country or state, regardless of the zip code. Therefore, this will be the standard Tax Rate for California and will apply to all customers whose shipping state is California. However, if the zip code 90064 has different tax rates than the other zip codes in California (and in this example, it does), you would create another California Tax Rate, where you specify the zip code as 90064. Now, all orders with a California shipping country will use the standard Tax Rate, unless the shipping zip code is 90064, in which case it will use the specific tax rate. You can create a Tax Rate for each zip code that differs from the standard California Tax Rate.
- **Rate 1-5** - Now that you have defined to which region this Tax Rate will apply, you have the option to define up to five different tax rates. Tax rates apply at the item level, because it can differ depending on the Product Tax Class of each item. It will calculate as a percentage of the price of the item. Magento will choose which of the five tax rates to apply to the item based on the location defined above and which rate is defined in the Tax Rules. For example, for the standard California Tax Rate, you can define Rate 1 as 8(%), and Rate 2 as

4, and Rate 3 as 2. For the 90064 zip code, you can define Rate 1 as 9, and Rate 2 as 4.5, and Rate 3 as 2.25.

Tax Rate Information

Country *	United States
State *	California
Zip/Post Code	90064
Rate 1	9
Rate 2	4.5
Rate 3	2.25
Rate 4	0.0000
Rate 5	0.0000

If you navigate to Sales > Tax > Import / Export Tax Rates, you can create a batch of new Tax Rates. You can upload a .csv file containing a column for Country, State, Zip/Postal Code, and a column for each Rate. First, you must **Browse** for the file, and then click **Import Tax Rates**. This is especially useful if you have many different regions for which you must create different Tax Rates, because this is much more efficient than creating each Tax Rate individually. In this page, you can also Export Tax Rates, which will create a .csv listing all saved Tax Rates. This is useful when first creating Tax Rates, because you can export a blank .csv template, enter your rates manually, save, and then import this same .csv file.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	Country	State	Zip/Post C	Rate 1	Rate 2	Rate 3	Rate 4	Rate 5
2	US	CA	*	8	4	2	0	0
3	US	CA	90064	9	4.5	2.25	0	0

Tax Classes

Combined with Tax Rates, Tax Classes define Tax Rules. There are two kinds of Tax Classes: Customer and Product. Each type of class can be created simply by entering a name. The Customer Tax Classes will then be assigned to individual customers, and the Product Tax Classes will be assigned to individual products. Magento will determine which tax rate (1-5) to apply to an each item in an Order based on the combination of the customer's Customer Tax Class and each item's Product Tax Class in the Tax Rules.

Customer Tax Classes

Customer Tax Classes are associated to Customers by assigning them to Customer Groups, which are then assigned to Customers. By default, Magento will include one Customer Tax Class: Retail Customer. This Tax Class will be assigned to the two default Customer Groups: General and Not Logged In. You will learn how to change the Tax Class associated to these Customer Groups, create new Customer Groups, and associate Customer Groups to Customers in [Chapter 6: Customers](#). If you have different Tax Rules that will apply to Wholesale customers, you will want to create a new Customer Tax Class.

1. To define the Customer Tax Classes, navigate to Sales > Tax > Customer Tax Classes.
2. Click **Add New** in the top right of the page.
3. Enter the **Class Name** (in this case, Wholesale Customer).
4. Click **Save Class**.

Product Tax Classes

Product Tax Classes are associated to Products. By default, Magento will include one Product Tax Class: Taxable Goods. If you have different Tax Rules that will apply to Apparel, you will want to create a new Product Tax Class. You can configure all new products to default to your preferred Product Tax Class by navigating to System > Configuration, selecting the Catalog tab, and choosing that Product Tax Class from the Default Tax Class drop-down.

1. To define the Product Tax Classes, navigate to Sales > Tax > Product Tax Classes.
2. Click **Add New** in the top right of the page.
3. Enter the **Class Name** (in this case, Apparel).
4. Click **Save Class**.



*Note: If you wish to charge tax on shipping, you may want to create a Product Tax Class that will be used solely to configure the shipping tax. Magento approaches shipping as another item in the Order, so it must be associated to a Product Tax Class. You can associate it to one of the same Tax Classes that you use for your products, or create a separate one that is unique for shipping tax. This can be done by navigating to System > Configuration, clicking the Sales tab, and selecting the Tax Class from the **Tax Class for Shipping** drop-down. If you select None, shipping will not be taxed. If do you choose to tax shipping, the rates will be calculated based on your Tax Rules, just as with any item in an Order.*

Tax Rules

Now that you have established Your Tax Rates and Classes, you are ready to define your Tax Rules. If you need to have different tax rates for your different combinations of Customer Tax Classes and Product Tax Classes, you can define a Tax Rule for each scenario. Let's first define the most common scenario: Retail Customers purchasing Taxable Goods. This is what Rate 1 is designated for.

1. Navigate to Sales > Tax > Manage Tax Rules.
2. Click **Add New Tax Rule** in the top right of the page.
3. Select the **Customer Tax Class** from the drop-down (in this case, Retail Customer).
4. Select the **Product Tax Class** (in this case, Taxable Goods).
5. Select the **Tax Rate** (in this case, Rate 1).
6. Click **Save Rule**.

Now, whenever a Retail Customer purchases a Taxable Goods product, they will be taxed the rate defined in Rate 1. Customers in the 90064 zip code will be charged 9% of the item price. Customers in the rest of the state of California will be charged 8% of the item price.

Wholesale Customers, however, are only required to pay half the tax of Retail Customers. Therefore, you would create a new Tax Rule. Select Wholesale Customer in the Customer Tax Class drop-down, and Rate 2 (which is half the amount of Rate 1) in the Tax Rate drop-down. Now, whenever a Wholesale Customer purchases a Taxable Goods product, they will be taxed the rate defined in Rate 2. Customers in the 90064 zip code will be charged 4.5% of the item price. Customers in the rest of the state of California will be charged 4% of the item price.

Again, there is another exception to the scenario defined in the first Tax Rule. Apparel is taxed at half the rate as other Taxable Goods. Therefore, you would create another new Tax Rule. Leave the Customer Tax Class as Retail Customer, but select Apparel in the Product Tax Class drop-down, and Rate 2 (which is half the amount of Rate 1) in the Tax Rate drop-down. Now, whenever a Retail Customer purchases an Apparel product, they will be taxed the rate defined in Rate 2. Customers in the 90064 zip code will be charged 4.5% of the item price. Customers in the rest of the state of California will be charged 4% of the item price.

But what if a Wholesale Customer purchases an Apparel item? They should be taxed at half the rate defined in second or third scenarios, which is a quarter the rate defined in the first scenario. Create a new Tax Rule. Select Wholesale Customer in the Customer Tax Class drop-down, Apparel in the Product Tax Class drop-down, and Rate 3 (which is a quarter the amount of Rate 1) in the Tax Rate drop-down. Now, whenever a Wholesale Customer purchases an Apparel product, they will be taxed the rate defined in Rate 3. Customers in the 90064

zip code will be charged 2.25% of the item price. Customers in the rest of the state of California will be charged 2% of the item price.

Tax Rule Information

Customer Tax Class *	Wholesale Customer
Product Tax Class *	Apparel
Tax Rate *	Rate 3
	Rate 1
	Rate 2
	Rate 3
	Rate 4
	Rate 5

Shipping Options

Shipping Settings

Configure the Shipping Settings by navigating to System > Configuration and selecting the Shipping Settings tab in the left column.

Origin

Enter the **Country**, **Region/State**, **ZIP/Postal Code**, and **City** from where the shipments will be sent (i.e. the location of your company and/or warehouse). This value will be one half of the equation used to calculate the shipping rates for the external shipping gateways (UPS, USPS, FedEx and DHL). The customer's shipping address will be the other half of the equation. Additionally, if you choose to calculate the tax in an Order based on the **Shipping origin** (which you can configure in the Sales tab), Magento will use the address from these Origin fields.

Options

- **Allow Shipping to multiple addresses** - If you select No, your customers can only enter one shipping address per Order, where all the items in the Order will be shipped. If you select Yes, your customers will have the option to ship to multiple addresses. A link entitled **Checkout with Multiple Addresses** will appear in the shopping cart, below the regular **Proceed to Checkout button**. In order to use this checkout method, your customers must have a registered account, even if you have chosen to allow guest checkout. From this checkout page, each unit of each item will be divided up. Your customers can quantity to any product in the list, delete any product, and choose a different address for each as well (or add a new address if they don't have the correct one saved in their address book yet).

Ship to Multiple Addresses

[Enter a New Address](#)

Product	Qty	Send to	Remove
CN Clogs Beach/Garden Clog Gender: Mens Shoe Size: 9	2	Magento Commerce, 11832 W. Pico Blvd., Los Angeles, California 90064, United States	
The Only Children: Paisley T-Shirt Size: Medium	1	Magento Commerce, 11832 W. Pico Blvd., Los Angeles, California 90064, United States	
CN Clogs Beach/Garden Clog Gender: Mens Shoe Size: 9	1	Professor Peter Van Nostrand, 129 W. 81st St Apt. 5B, New York, New York 10025, United States	
The Only Children: Paisley T-Shirt Size: Medium	4	Professor Peter Van Nostrand, 129 W. 81st St Apt. 5B, New York, New York 10025, United States	

[Update Qty & Addresses](#)

The shipping method can be different for each address as well.

Shipping Information

Address 1 of 2

Shipping to | [Edit](#)

Magento Commerce
Varien
11832 W. Pico Blvd.
Los Angeles, 90064, California
United States
T: 310-954-8012

Shipping Method | [Edit](#)

DHL (Ground) - \$ 6.19

Items | [Edit Items](#)

Product Name	Price	Qty	Subtotal
CN Clogs Beach/Garden Clog Gender: Mens Shoe Size: 9	\$ 14.67	2	\$ 29.34
The Only Children: Paisley T-Shirt Size: Medium	\$ 13.76	1	\$ 13.76
Subtotal			\$ 43.10
Shipping & Handling (DHL - Ground)			\$ 6.19
Tax			\$ 3.88
Total for this address			\$ 53.17

Address 2 of 2

Shipping to | [Edit](#)

Professor Peter Van Nostrand
129 W. 81st St.
Apt. 5B
New York, 10001, New York
United States
T: 555-FILK

Shipping Method | [Edit](#)

Flat Rate (Fixed) - \$ 25.00

Items | [Edit Items](#)

Product Name	Price	Qty	Subtotal
CN Clogs Beach/Garden Clog Gender: Mens Shoe Size: 9	\$ 14.67	1	\$ 14.67
The Only Children: Paisley T-Shirt Size: Medium	\$ 13.76	4	\$ 55.04
Subtotal			\$ 69.71
Shipping & Handling (Flat Rate - Fixed)			\$ 25.00
Tax			\$ 6.28
Total for this address			\$ 100.99

- Maximum qty allowed for Shipping to multiple addresses - You can determine the maximum quantity that a customer can enter in the Qty field for each item. When the **Update Qty & Addresses** button is clicked, the quantity is split up, so that there is a separate line for each unit. Entering a limit for this quantity would prevent a customer from entering a very high number, such as 1,000,000, and potentially causing the server to time out.

When an Order with multiple shipping addresses is completed, it will split into multiple Orders. There will be one Order for each unique shipping address, and your customer will receive separate email notifications for each shipping address as well. This is because in the admin, there can only be one shipping address per order. Because the Order is split, each Order in the admin is fulfilled the exact same way as a regular Order. For more information on managing Orders and Order fulfillment, refer to [Chapter 8: Managing Orders](#).

Shipping Methods

Configure the Shipping Methods by navigating to System > Configuration and selecting the Shipping Methods tab in the left column.

Flat Rate

Flat Rate

Enabled	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>
Title	<input type="text" value="Flat Rate"/>
Method name	<input type="text" value="Fixed"/>
Type	<input type="text" value="Per Item"/>
Price	<input type="text" value="5.00"/>
Calculate Handling Fee	<input type="text" value="Fixed"/>
Handling Fee	<input type="text" value="4.50"/>
Displayed Error Message	<p>This shipping method is currently unavailable. If you would like to ship using this shipping method, please contact us.</p>
Ship to applicable countries	<input type="text" value="All Allowed Countries"/>
Ship to Specific countries	<input type="text" value="Afghanistan"/> <input type="text" value="Albania"/> <input type="text" value="Algeria"/> <input type="text" value="American Samoa"/> <input type="text" value="Andorra"/> <input type="text" value="Angola"/> <input type="text" value="Anguilla"/> <input type="text" value="Antarctica"/> <input type="text" value="Antigua and Barbuda"/> <input type="text" value="Argentina"/>
Sort order	<input type="text" value="1"/>

- **Enabled** - Select Yes for the this method to be listed in the Shipping Method section of the checkout. Select No for this method not to be listed.
- **Title** - Enter the title of the shipping method as it will appear in the Shipping Method list. All individual shipping methods contained within this title will display beneath it, with a radio button that the customer can select.
- **Method Name** - The external shipping gateways provide the names of the individual shipping methods to Magento. Because this method is not an external gateway, you must designate the name of the individual method here. The radio button that the customer can select will appear next to this Method Name. There is only one individual shipping method available, so there is only one field under Method Name.

- **Type** - If you select Per Order, the Price that you designate below will be the shipping charge for the entire Order. If you select Per Item, the Price will be multiplied by the quantity of items in the Order.
- **Price** - For the Flat Rate, you determine the amount your customers will be charged for shipping.
- **Calculate Handling Fee** - If you enter a Handling Fee below, this determines how the Handling Fee will be calculated. It can be a fixed monetary amount, or a percentage of the total shipping price.
- **Handling Fee** - If you desire, you can enter a Handling Fee, which will add to the Price. There is no indication in the Order that an additional Handling Fee has been added to the shipping Price.
- **Displayed Error Message** - If this shipping method is not available because the customer does not meet the requirements set by the countries filter below, this message will display in place of the radio button and Method Name. However, this message will only display if the shipping method displays. This can be set in the Show method if not applicable drop-down below.
- **Ship to applicable countries** - Select which customers can use this shipping method. **All Allowed Countries** means all customers from the default countries list can use this shipping method. If you haven't already configured the default list, it can be done by navigating to System > Configuration, clicking the General tab, and selecting each country you wish to allow from the **Allow countries** menu. If you want to further reduce the number of countries to which your customers will be allowed to ship Orders using this shipping method, select **Specific Countries**. This means that only customers whose shipping address includes one of the countries listed in the **Ship to Specific countries** list below can use this shipping method.
- **Ship to Specific countries** - This list is inactive unless **Specific Countries** is selected from the **Ship to applicable countries** list above. It basically works as a filter, so that this shipping method will only be listed for those customers whose shipping address is one of these selected countries.
- **Show method if not applicable** - This drop-down only displays if you select Specific Countries from the Ship to applicable countries drop-down above. This is because selecting Specific Countries enables the countries filter, and this method will not be applicable to any customer who is not from one of the selected countries. Here you can determine whether or not the method will then be visible to them. If it is, it will display with the message defined in the Displayed Error Message field above.
- **Sort Order** - If you are choosing to allow multiple shipping methods, this will determine in what order each method is listed in the front-end.

Table Rates

- **Enabled** - Select Yes for the this method to be listed in the Shipping Method section of the checkout. Select No for this method not to be listed.
- **Title** - Enter the title of the shipping method as it will appear in the Shipping Method list. All individual shipping methods contained within this title will display beneath it, with a radio button that the customer can select.
- **Method Name** - The external shipping gateways provide the names of the individual shipping methods to Magento. Because this method is not an external gateway, you must designate the name of the individual

method here. The radio button that the customer can select will appear next to this Method Name. There is only one individual shipping method available, so there is only one field under Method Name.

- **Condition** - This determines which aspects of the order will be used to select the proper shipping price. Table Rates must be calculated using the Destination, however the Destination can be calculated in conjunction with either the Weight, Price, or # of Items. Depending on your selection, the .csv format that is required will include columns defining the Destination, in addition to a column for either the Weight, Price, or # of Items, respectively.
- **Export** - This option can only be seen at the Website level. It is not a global option. To use it, you must first select one of your Websites from the **Current Configuration Scope** menu. This will produce a .csv file in the format necessary to enter rates given the option chosen from the Condition drop-down. Enter the rates and other applicable data into the file, and save. If the Condition was Price vs. Destination, your .csv file might look something like this:

	A	B	C	D	E
1	Country	Region/State	Zip/Postal Code	Order Subtotal (and above)	Shipping Price
2	USA	*	*	0	15
3	USA	*	*	50	10
4	USA	*	*	100	5

- **Import** - This option can only be seen at the Website level. It is not a global option. To use it, you must first select one of your Websites from the **Current Configuration Scope** menu. Use this to locate the .csv file that you saved, and upload it, defining the rate Magento will use for each scenario defined by the Condition.
- **Calculate Handling Fee** - If you enter a Handling Fee below, this determines how the Handling Fee will be calculated. It can be a fixed monetary amount, or a percentage of the total shipping price.
- **Handling Fee** - If you desire, you can enter a Handling Fee, which will add to the shipping cost. There is no indication in the Order that an additional Handling Fee has been added to the shipping cost.
- **Displayed Error Message** - If this shipping method is not available because the customer does not meet the requirements set by the countries filter below, this message will display in place of the radio button and Method Name. However, this message will only display if the shipping method displays. This can be set in the Show method if not applicable drop-down below.
- **Ship to applicable countries** - Select which customers can use this shipping method. **All Allowed Countries** means all customers from the default countries list can use this shipping method. If you haven't already configured the default list, it can be done by navigating to System > Configuration, clicking the General tab, and selecting each country you wish to allow from the **Allow countries** menu. If you want to further reduce the number of countries to which your customers will be allowed to ship Orders using this shipping method, select **Specific Countries**. This means that only customers whose shipping address includes one of the countries listed in the **Ship to Specific countries** list below can use this shipping method.

- **Ship to Specific countries** - This list is inactive unless **Specific Countries** is selected from the **Ship to applicable countries** list above. It basically works as a filter, so that this shipping method will only be listed for those customers whose shipping address is one of these selected countries.
- **Show method if not applicable** - This drop-down only displays if you select Specific Countries from the Ship to applicable countries drop-down above. This is because selecting Specific Countries enables the countries filter, and this method will not be applicable to any customer who is not from one of the selected countries. Here you can determine whether or not the method will then be visible to them. If it is, it will display with the message defined in the Displayed Error Message field above. If this method is not available because you have not defined the customer's shipping address in your rates, this method will not display as an available shipping method during checkout.
- **Sort Order** - If you are choosing to allow multiple shipping methods, this will determine in what order each method is listed in the front-end.

Free Shipping

- **Enabled** - Select Yes for the this method to be listed in the Shipping Method section of the checkout. Select No for this method not to be listed.
- **Title** - Enter the title of the shipping method as it will appear in the Shipping Method list. All individual shipping methods contained within this title will display beneath it, with a radio button that the customer can select.
- **Method Name** - The external shipping gateways provide the names of the individual shipping methods to Magento. Because this method is not an external gateway, you must designate the name of the individual method here. The radio button that the customer can select will appear next to this Method Name. There is only one individual shipping method available, so there is only one field under Method Name.
- **Minimum order amount** - You can designate that Free Shipping will only be offered to your customers if they have ordered a minimum monetary amount of products. If this minimum is not reached, this option will not appear in the Shipping Method list.
- **Displayed Error Message** - If this shipping method is not available because the customer does not meet the requirements set by the countries filter below, this message will display in place of the radio button and Method Name. However, this message will only display if the shipping method displays. This can be set in the Show method if not applicable drop-down below.
- **Ship to applicable countries** - Select which customers can use this shipping method. **All Allowed Countries** means all customers from the default countries list can use this shipping method. If you haven't already configured the default list, it can be done by navigating to System > Configuration, clicking the General tab, and selecting each country you wish to allow from the **Allow countries** menu. If you want to further reduce the number of countries to which your customers will be allowed to ship Orders using this shipping method, select **Specific Countries**. This means that only customers whose shipping address includes one of the countries listed in the **Ship to Specific countries** list below can use this shipping method.

- **Ship to Specific countries** - This list is inactive unless **Specific Countries** is selected from the **Ship to applicable countries** list above. It basically works as a filter, so that this shipping method will only be listed for those customers whose shipping address is one of these selected countries.
- **Show method if not applicable** - This drop-down only displays if you select Specific Countries from the Ship to applicable countries drop-down above. This is because selecting Specific Countries enables the countries filter, and this method will not be applicable to any customer who is not from one of the selected countries. Here you can determine whether or not the method will then be visible to them. If it is, it will display with the message defined in the Displayed Error Message field above.
- **Sort Order** - If you are choosing to allow multiple shipping methods, this will determine in what order each method is listed in the front-end.

UPS

3 Shipping Method

United Parcel Service

- UPS Ground - \$ 8.14
- UPS Second Day Air - \$ 16.98
- UPS Next Day Air - \$ 33.84

United States Postal Service

- Bound Printed Matter - \$ 3.29
- Library Mail - \$ 4.26
- Media Mail - \$ 4.51
- Priority Mail Flat-Rate Envelope - \$ 4.60
- Parcel Post - \$ 5.42
- Priority Mail - \$ 7.75
- Priority Mail Flat-Rate Box - \$ 8.95
- Express Mail Flat-Rate Envelope - \$ 16.25
- Express Mail PO to PO - \$ 37.60
- Express Mail - \$ 40.00

Federal Express

- Ground - \$ 7.38
- Home Delivery - \$ 9.45
- Express Saver - \$ 13.82
- 2Day - \$ 15.54
- Standard Overnight - \$ 26.82
- Priority Overnight - \$ 32.41
- First Overnight - \$ 64.02

DHL

- Express - \$ 61.94
- Next Afternoon - \$ 61.94
- Second Day Service - \$ 32.55
- Ground - \$ 8.10

- **Enabled** - Select Yes for the this method to be listed in the Shipping Method section of the checkout. Select No for this method not to be listed.
- **UPS type** - To use **United Parcel Service XML**, you need to have a license number and password.
- **Gateway URL** - This is the URL which Magento uses to connect to UPS and receive live shipping rates. It will be prepopulated by default.
- **Title** - Enter the title of the shipping method as it will appear in the Shipping Method list. All individual shipping methods contained within this title (listed in the Allowed Methods list below) will display beneath it, with a radio button that the customer can select.
- **Container** - Select the container type that you typically use to package the products ordered from your store. UPS will only deliver packages weighing up to 150 lbs.

- **Destination Type** - Select the destination to which you typically deliver your Orders, **Residential** or **Commercial**.
- **Handling Fee** - If you desire, you can enter a Handling Fee, which will add to the shipping cost provided by UPS. There is no indication in the Order that an additional Handling Fee has been added to the shipping cost.
- **Pickup method** - Select the method by which you prefer to deliver your packages to UPS.
- **Allowed Methods** - UPS offers a variety of shipping methods. You can choose which of this carrier's shipping methods to allow by selecting them from this menu. The methods you select will display on the front-end under the Title you designate for UPS.
- **Free Method** - In this drop-down, you can select which of this carrier's shipping methods you want to offer your customers for free. Or, you can select None. This is similar to the Free Shipping method above, however it will be listed with the UPS section and contain the name of the UPS shipping method, so that your customers know exactly by which method their order will be shipped to them.
- **Minimum order amount for free shipping** - Also similar to the Free Shipping method above, you can designate the minimum monetary amount of products your customers need to purchase in order for this shipping method to be free. If this minimum is not reached, this option will still appear in the list of UPS methods, however it will cost the amount designated by UPS. This field will be inactive if you select None for Free Method above.
- **Displayed Error Message** - If this shipping method is not available because the customer does not meet the requirements set by the countries filter below, this message will display in place of the radio button and Method Name. However, this message will only display if the shipping method displays. This can be set in the Show method if not applicable drop-down below.
- **Ship to applicable countries** - Select which customers can use this shipping method. **All Allowed Countries** means all customers from the default countries list can use this shipping method. If you haven't already configured the default list, it can be done by navigating to System > Configuration, clicking the General tab, and selecting each country you wish to allow from the **Allow countries** menu. If you want to further reduce the number of countries to which your customers will be allowed to ship Orders using this shipping method, select **Specific Countries**. This means that only customers whose shipping address includes one of the countries listed in the **Ship to Specific countries** list below can use this shipping method.
- **Ship to Specific countries** - This list is inactive unless **Specific Countries** is selected from the **Ship to applicable countries** list above. It basically works as a filter, so that this shipping method will only be listed for those customers whose shipping address is one of these selected countries.
- **Show method if not applicable** - This drop-down only displays if you select Specific Countries from the Ship to applicable countries drop-down above. This is because selecting Specific Countries enables the countries filter, and this method will not be applicable to any customer who is not from one of the selected countries. Here you can determine whether or not the method will then be visible to them. If it is, it will display with the message defined in the Displayed Error Message field above. If this method is not available because UPS

does not deliver to the customer's shipping address, this method will automatically display with the Displayed Error Message.

- **Sort Order** - If you are choosing to allow multiple shipping methods, this will determine in what order each method is listed in the front-end.

USPS

- **Enabled** - Select Yes for the this method to be listed in the Shipping Method section of the checkout. Select No for this method not to be listed.
- **Gateway URL** - This is the URL which Magento uses to connect to USPS and receive live shipping rates. It will be prepopulated by default.
- **Title** - Enter the title of the shipping method as it will appear in the Shipping Method list. All individual shipping methods contained within this title (listed in the Allowed Methods list below) will display beneath it, with a radio button that the customer can select.
- **User ID** - You must create an account with USPS, and this value will provided by them.
- **Container** - Select the container type that you typically use to package the products ordered from your store. USPS will only deliver packages weighing up to 70 lbs.
- **Size** - Select the container size that you typically use to package the products ordered from your store.
- **Machinable** - It is recommended that you select Yes.
- **Handling Fee** - If you desire, you can enter a Handling Fee, which will add to the shipping cost provided by USPS. There is no indication in the Order that an additional Handling Fee has been added to the shipping cost.
- **Allowed Methods** - USPS offers a variety of shipping methods. You can choose which of this carrier's shipping methods to allow by selecting them from this menu. The methods you select will display on the front-end under the Title you designate for USPS.
- **Free Method** - In this drop-down, you can select which of this carrier's shipping methods you want to offer your customers for free. Or, you can select None. This is similar to the Free Shipping method above, however it will be listed with the USPS section and contain the name of the USPS shipping method, so that your customers know exactly by which method their order will be shipped to them.
- **Minimum order amount for free shipping** - Also similar to the Free Shipping method above, you can designate the minimum monetary amount of products your customers need to purchase in order for this shipping method to be free. If this minimum is not reached, this option will still appear in the list of USPS methods, however it will cost the amount designated by USPS. This field will be inactive if you select None for Free Method above.
- **Displayed Error Message** - If this shipping method is not available because the customer does not meet the requirements set by the countries filter below, this message will display in place of the radio button and Method Name. However, this message will only display if the shipping method displays. This can be set in the Show method if not applicable drop-down below.

- **Ship to applicable countries** - Select which customers can use this shipping method. **All Allowed Countries** means all customers from the default countries list can use this shipping method. If you haven't already configured the default list, it can be done by navigating to System > Configuration, clicking the General tab, and selecting each country you wish to allow from the **Allow countries** menu. If you want to further reduce the number of countries to which your customers will be allowed to ship Orders using this shipping method, select **Specific Countries**. This means that only customers whose shipping address includes one of the countries listed in the **Ship to Specific countries** list below can use this shipping method.
- **Ship to Specific countries** - This list is inactive unless **Specific Countries** is selected from the Ship to applicable countries list above. It basically works as a filter, so that this shipping method will only be listed for those customers whose shipping address is one of these selected countries.
- **Show method if not applicable** - This drop-down only displays if you select Specific Countries from the Ship to applicable countries drop-down above. This is because selecting Specific Countries enables the countries filter, and this method will not be applicable to any customer who is not from one of the selected countries. Here you can determine whether or not the method will then be visible to them. If it is, it will display with the message defined in the Displayed Error Message field above. If this method is not available because USPS does not deliver to the customer's shipping address, this method will automatically display with the Displayed Error Message.
- **Sort Order** - If you are choosing to allow multiple shipping methods, this will determine in what order each method is listed in the front-end.

FedEx

- **Enabled** - Select Yes for the this method to be listed in the Shipping Method section of the checkout. Select No for this method not to be listed.
- **Gateway URL** - This is the URL which Magento uses to connect to FedEx and receive live shipping rates. It will be prepopulated by default.
- **Title** - Enter the title of the shipping method as it will appear in the Shipping Method list. All individual shipping methods contained within this title (listed in the Allowed Methods list below) will display beneath it, with a radio button that the customer can select.
- **Account ID** - You must create an account with FedEx, and this value will provided by them.
- **Packaging** - Select the container type that you typically use to package the products ordered from your store. If you select a smaller package size, but the weight of a product in the Order is large, FedEx may not return any results. FedEx will only deliver packages weighing up to 150 lbs.
- **Dropoff** - Select the method by which you prefer to deliver your packages to UPS.
- **Handling Fee** - If you desire, you can enter a Handling Fee, which will add to the shipping cost provided by FedEx. There is no indication in the Order that an additional Handling Fee has been added to the shipping cost.

- **Allowed Methods** - FedEx offers a variety of shipping methods. You can choose which of this carrier's shipping methods to allow by selecting them from this menu. The methods you select will display on the front-end under the Title you designate for FedEx.
- **Free Method** - In this drop-down, you can select which of this carrier's shipping methods you want to offer your customers for free. Or, you can select None. This is similar to the Free Shipping method above, however it will be listed with the FedEx section and contain the name of the FedEx shipping method, so that your customers know exactly by which method their order will be shipped to them.
- **Minimum order amount for free shipping** - Also similar to the Free Shipping method above, you can designate the minimum monetary amount of products your customers need to purchase in order for this shipping method to be free. If this minimum is not reached, this option will still appear in the list of FedEx methods, however it will cost the amount designated by FedEx. This field will be inactive if you select None for Free Method above.
- **Displayed Error Message** - If this shipping method is not available because the customer does not meet the requirements set by the countries filter below, this message will display in place of the radio button and Method Name. However, this message will only display if the shipping method displays. This can be set in the Show method if not applicable drop-down below.
- **Ship to applicable countries** - Select which customers can use this shipping method. **All Allowed Countries** means all customers from the default countries list can use this shipping method. If you haven't already configured the default list, it can be done by navigating to System > Configuration, clicking the General tab, and selecting each country you wish to allow from the **Allow countries menu**. If you want to further reduce the number of countries to which your customers will be allowed to ship Orders using this shipping method, select **Specific Countries**. This means that only customers whose shipping address includes one of the countries listed in the **Ship to Specific countries** list below can use this shipping method.
- **Ship to Specific countries** - This list is inactive unless **Specific Countries** is selected from the **Ship to applicable countries** list above. It basically works as a filter, so that this shipping method will only be listed for those customers whose shipping address is one of these selected countries.
- **Show method if not applicable** - This drop-down only displays if you select Specific Countries from the Ship to applicable countries drop-down above. This is because selecting Specific Countries enables the countries filter, and this method will not be applicable to any customer who is not from one of the selected countries. Here you can determine whether or not the method will then be visible to them. If it is, it will display with the message defined in the Displayed Error Message field above. If this method is not available because FedEx does not deliver to the customer's shipping address, this method will automatically display with the Displayed Error Message.
- **Sort Order** - If you are choosing to allow multiple shipping methods, this will determine in what order each method is listed in the front-end.

DHL

- **Enabled** - Select Yes for the this method to be listed in the Shipping Method section of the checkout. Select No for this method not to be listed.
- **Title** - Enter the title of the shipping method as it will appear in the Shipping Method list. All individual shipping methods contained within this title (listed in the Allowed Methods list below) will display beneath it, with a radio button that the customer can select.
- **Gateway URL** - This is the URL which Magento uses to connect to DHL and receive live shipping rates. It will be prepopulated by default.
- **Access ID** - You must create an account with DHL, and this value will provided by them.
- **Password** - You must create an account with DHL, and this value will provided by them.
- **Account Number** - You must create an account with DHL, and this value will provided by them.
- **Shipping Key** - You must create an account with DHL, and this value will provided by them.
- **Shipping Key (International)** - You must create an account with DHL, and this value will provided by them.
- **Shipment Type** - Select the container type that you typically use to package the products ordered from your store. If you select a smaller package size, but the weight of a product in the Order is large, DHL may not return any results. DHL will only deliver packages weighing up to 150 lbs.
- **Handling Fee** - If you desire, you can enter a Handling Fee, which will add to the shipping cost provided by DHL. There is no indication in the Order that an additional Handling Fee has been added to the shipping cost.
- **Shipment Dutiable** - Indicates whether or not international duty charges can be applied to the shipment.
- **Package Description** - The content description of the shipment entered in this field will appear in the online tracking results.
- **Shipment Duty Payment Type** - Indicates from which party the international duty charges will be paid.
- **Allowed Methods** - DHL offers a variety of shipping methods. You can choose which of this carrier's shipping methods to allow by selecting them from this menu. The methods you select will display on the front-end under the Title you designate for DHL.
- **Free Method** - In this drop-down, you can select which of this carrier's shipping methods you want to offer your customers for free. Or, you can select None. This is similar to the Free Shipping method above, however it will be listed with the DHL section and contain the name of the DHL shipping method, so that your customers know exactly by which method their order will be shipped to them.
- **Minimum order amount for free shipping** - Also similar to the Free Shipping method above, you can designate the minimum monetary amount of products your customers need to purchase in order for this shipping method to be free. If this minimum is not reached, this option will still appear in the list of DHL methods, however it will cost the amount designated by DHL. This field will be inactive if you select None for Free Method above.
- **Displayed Error Message** - If this shipping method is not available because the customer does not meet the requirements set by the countries filter below, this message will display in place of the radio button and Method Name. However, this message will only display if the shipping method displays. This can be set in the Show method if not applicable drop-down below.

- **Ship to applicable countries** - Select which customers can use this shipping method. **All Allowed**
Countries means all customers from the default countries list can use this shipping method. If you haven't already configured the default list, it can be done by navigating to System > Configuration, clicking the General tab, and selecting each country you wish to allow from the **Allow countries** menu. If you want to further reduce the number of countries to which your customers will be allowed to ship Orders using this shipping method, select **Specific Countries**. This means that only customers whose shipping address includes one of the countries listed in the **Ship to Specific countries** list below can use this shipping method.
- **Ship to Specific countries** - This list is inactive unless **Specific Countries** is selected from the **Ship to applicable countries** list above. It basically works as a filter, so that this shipping method will only be listed for those customers whose shipping address is one of these selected countries.
- **Show method if not applicable** - This drop-down only displays if you select Specific Countries from the Ship to applicable countries drop-down above. This is because selecting Specific Countries enables the countries filter, and this method will not be applicable to any customer who is not from one of the selected countries. Here you can determine whether or not the method will then be visible to them. If it is, it will display with the message defined in the Displayed Error Message field above. If this method is not available because DHL does not deliver to the customer's shipping address, this method will automatically display with the Displayed Error Message.
- **Sort Order** - If you are choosing to allow multiple shipping methods, this will determine in what order each method is listed in the front-end.

Accepting Money

Overview of set up and front-end functionality of gateways - Magento offers you many different options for accepting payments from customers. There are both offline payment methods, and online payment methods. For the online methods, Magento supports integration with several third party payment gateways, so that customer credit card information will automatically sent through the gateway (as either an authorization, or an authorization and charge) upon completion of an order. To configure your payment settings, navigate to System > Configuration, and click Payment Methods in the left column. Each payment method will have its own section which can be configured. There are several PayPal methods. Because some of these methods share account information, there is a separate tab in the left column called PayPal Accounts, in which you can enter the account information for the corresponding PayPal method(s) which you have enabled from the Payment Methods tab. Google Checkout is entirely contained within a separate tab, called Google API, so that there are no settings for Google Checkout in the Payment Methods tab.

Payment Methods and PayPal Accounts

Saved CC

If you do not have a payment gateway, but still want to accept Credit Cards for processing offline, you can capture the credit card information using the Saved Credit Card payment method.

Setup

Saved CC

Enabled	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>
Title	<input type="text" value="Credit Card (saved)"/>
New order status	<input type="text" value="Pending"/>
Credit Card Types	<input type="text" value="American Express"/> <input type="text" value="Visa"/> <input type="text" value="Master Card"/> <input type="text" value="Discover"/> <input type="text" value="Other"/>
Credit Card Verification	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>
Payment from applicable countries	<input type="text" value="All Allowed Countries"/>
Payment from Specific countries	<input type="text" value="Afghanistan"/> <input type="text" value="Albania"/> <input type="text" value="Algeria"/> <input type="text" value="American Samoa"/> <input type="text" value="Andorra"/> <input type="text" value="Angola"/> <input type="text" value="Anguilla"/> <input type="text" value="Antarctica"/> <input type="text" value="Antigua and Barbuda"/> <input type="text" value="Argentina"/>
Minimum Order Total	<input type="text"/>
Maximum Order Total	<input type="text"/>
Sort order	<input type="text" value="1"/>

- **Enabled** - Select Yes for the this method to be listed in the Payment Information section of the checkout.
Select No for this method not to be listed.
- **Title** - Enter the name of the payment method as it will appear in the Payment Information list.
- **New Order Status** - Select the Order Status of all new Orders created using this payment method from the drop-down. The recommended status is Pending, as this is intended to apply to Orders which have not had any actions performed on them, however you can change this to whichever status you prefer.

- **Credit Card Types** - Select the options which will appear in the Credit Card Type drop-down on the front-end.
- **Credit Card Verification** - Select whether or not the customer will be required to enter their Credit Card Verification number during checkout.
- **Payment from applicable countries** - Select which customers can use this payment method. **All Allowed Countries** means all customers from the default countries list can use this payment method. If you haven't already configured the default list, it can be done by navigating to System > Configuration, clicking the General tab, and selecting each country you wish to allow from the **Allow countries** menu. If you want to further reduce the number of countries from which your customers will be allowed to use this payment method, select **Specific Countries**. This means that only customers whose billing address includes one of the countries listed in the **Payment from Specific countries** list below can use this payment method.
- **Payment from Specific countries** - This list is inactive unless **Specific Countries** is selected from the **Payment from applicable countries** list above. It basically works as a filter, so that this payment method will only be listed for those customers whose billing address is one of these selected countries.
- **Minimum/Maximum Order Total** - These fields also work as filters. This payment method will only be listed for those customers whose order total is above the minimum (if a value is entered) and below the maximum (if a value is entered).
- **Sort Order** - If you are choosing to allow multiple payment methods, this will determine in what order each method is listed in the front-end.

Functionality on Front-End and Back-End

- When the customer selects this method from the payment method list, they will be required to enter the **Name on Card**, select the **Credit Card Type**, enter the **Credit Card Number**, and select the **Expiration Date**. If enabled, they will also be required to enter the **Card Verification Number**.

4 Payment Information

Credit Card (saved)

Name on Card *

Credit Card Type *

Credit Card Number *

Expiration Date *

 Year

Card Verification Number *

 [What is this?](#)

Check / Money order
 Purchase Order
 Credit Card (Authorize.net)
 Credit Card (Payflow Pro)
 Paypal Express
 Paypal Direct
 Paypal Standard

- The completed Order will display the information entered by the customer in the Payment Information box, except for the Card Verification Number.

Zero Subtotal Checkout

If a customer places an order and the subtotal is equal to zero, you can offer them this payment method, whereby they will not be required to enter any payment information. Unlike the other payment methods, for which you can set order amount filters, this method contains an intrinsic order amount filter, so that the method will not display unless the subtotal is equal to zero.

Setup

- Enabled** - Select Yes for this method to be listed in the Payment Information section of the checkout.
 Select No for this method not to be listed.
- Title** - Enter the name of the payment method as it will appear in the Payment Information list.
- New Order Status** - Select the Order Status of all new Orders created using this payment method from the drop-down. The recommended status is Pending, as this is intended to apply to Orders which have not had any actions performed on them, however you can change this to whichever status you prefer.

- **Payment from applicable countries** - Select which customers can use this payment method. **All Allowed Countries** means all customers from the default countries list can use this payment method. If you haven't already configured the default list, it can be done by navigating to System > Configuration, clicking the General tab, and selecting each country you wish to allow from the **Allow countries** menu. If you want to further reduce the number of countries from which your customers will be allowed to use this payment method, select **Specific Countries**. This means that only customers whose billing address includes one of the countries listed in the **Payment from Specific countries** list below can use this payment method.
- **Payment from Specific countries** - This list is inactive unless **Specific Countries** is selected from the **Payment from applicable countries** list above. It basically works as a filter, so that this payment method will only be listed for those customers whose billing address is one of these selected countries.
- **Sort Order** - If you are choosing to allow multiple payment methods, this will determine in what order each method is listed in the front-end.

Functionality on Front-End and Back-End

- When the customer selects this method from the payment method list, they will not be required to enter any information.
- The completed Order will display the Title in the Payment Information box.

Check/Money Order

Setup

- **Title** - Enter the name of the payment method as it will appear in the Payment Information list.
- **Enabled** - Select Yes for the this method to be listed in the Payment Information section of the checkout. Select No for this method not to be listed.
- **New Order Status** - Select the Order Status of all new Orders created using this payment method from the drop-down. The recommended status is Pending, as this is intended to apply to Orders which have not had any actions performed on them, however you can change this to whichever status you prefer.
- **Payment from applicable countries** - Select which customers can use this payment method. **All Allowed Countries** means all customers from the default countries list can use this payment method. If you haven't already configured the default list, it can be done by navigating to System > Configuration, clicking the General tab, and selecting each country you wish to allow from the **Allow countries** menu. If you want to further reduce the number of countries from which your customers will be allowed to use this payment method, select **Specific Countries**. This means that only customers whose billing address includes one of the countries listed in the **Payment from Specific countries** list below can use this payment method.
- **Payment from Specific countries** - This list is inactive unless **Specific Countries** is selected from the **Payment from applicable countries** list above. It basically works as a filter, so that this payment method will only be listed for those customers whose billing address is one of these selected countries.

- **Make Check payable to** - The value entered here will display when the customer selects this method from the list.
- **Send Check to** - The value entered here will display when the customer selects this method from the list.
- **Minimum/Maximum Order Total** - These fields also work as filters. This payment method will only be listed for those customers whose order total is above the minimum (if a value is entered) and below the maximum (if a value is entered).
- **Sort Order** - If you are choosing to allow multiple payment methods, this will determine in what order each method is listed in the front-end.

Functionality on Front-End and Back-End

- When the customer selects this method from the payment method list, they will not be required to enter any information. Instead, the **Make Check payable to** and **Send Check to** values will display.

4 Payment Information

Credit Card (saved)
 Check / Money order

Make Check payable to: Magento Inc.,
 Send Check to:
 11832 W. Pico Blvd.,
 Los Angeles, CA 90066

Purchase Order
 Credit Card (Authorize.net)
 Credit Card (Payflow Pro)
 Paypal Express
 Paypal Direct
 Paypal Standard

- The completed Order will also display these two values, in the Payment Information box.

Purchase Order

Setup

- **Enabled** - Select Yes for the this method to be listed in the Payment Information section of the checkout. Select No for this method not to be listed.
- **Title** - Enter the name of the payment method as it will appear in the Payment Information list.
- **New Order Status** - Select the Order Status of all new Orders created using this payment method from the drop-down. The recommended status is Pending, as this is intended to apply to Orders which have not had any actions performed on them, however you can change this to whichever status you prefer.

- **Payment from applicable countries** - Select which customers can use this payment method. **All Allowed Countries** means all customers from the default countries list can use this payment method. If you haven't already configured the default list, it can be done by navigating to System > Configuration, clicking the General tab, and selecting each country you wish to allow from the **Allow countries** menu. If you want to further reduce the number of countries from which your customers will be allowed to use this payment method, select **Specific Countries**. This means that only customers whose billing address includes one of the countries listed in the **Payment from Specific countries** list below can use this payment method.
- **Payment from Specific countries** - This list is inactive unless **Specific Countries** is selected from the **Payment from applicable countries** list above. It basically works as a filter, so that this payment method will only be listed for those customers whose billing address is one of these selected countries.
- **Minimum/Maximum Order Total** - These fields also work as filters. This payment method will only be listed for those customers whose order total is above the minimum (if a value is entered) and below the maximum (if a value is entered).
- **Sort Order** - If you are choosing to allow multiple payment methods, this will determine in what order each method is listed in the front-end.

Functionality on Front-End and Back-End

- When the customer selects this method from the payment method list, the customer will be required to enter the Purchase Order Number.

The screenshot shows a user interface for payment selection. At the top, there is a header labeled "4 Payment Information". Below this, there is a list of payment method options with radio buttons:

- Credit Card (saved)
- Check / Money order
- Purchase Order

Below the payment method list, there is a field labeled "Purchase Order Number *". To the right of this label is a rectangular input field for entering the purchase order number.

At the bottom of the screenshot, there is another list of payment method options:

- Credit Card (Authorize.net)
- Credit Card (Payflow Pro)
- Paypal Express
- Paypal Direct
- Paypal Standard

- The completed Order will display the Purchase Order Number in the Payment Information box.

Authorize.net Setup

- **Enabled** - Select Yes for the this method to be listed in the Payment Information section of the checkout. Select No for this method not to be listed.
- **Title** - Enter the name of the payment method as it will appear in the Payment Information list.
- **API Login ID** - Enter your Authorize.net API login ID, which can be found in the Account Settings of your Authorize.net account.
- **Payment Action** - Authorize.net is an online payment method. Therefore, the credit card must be Authorized by the payment gateway when the order is submitted, in order for it to complete. However, you can choose whether you want to **Authorize Only**, or **Authorize and Capture** the payment simultaneously during the Order creation. If you choose to Authorize and Capture, an Invoice will automatically be created for the full quantity of items in the Order. For more information about Invoices, refer to [Chapter 8: Managing Orders](#).
- **Transaction Key** - Enter your Authorize.net transaction key, which can be found in the Account Settings of your Authorize.net account.
- **New Order Status** - Select the Order Status of all new Orders created using this payment method from the drop-down. The recommended status is Pending, as this is intended to apply to Orders which have not had any actions performed on them, however you can change this to whichever status you prefer.
- **Test Mode** - Select whether or not the Orders placed using this payment method will be test Orders. Before you take your site live you will want to make sure you set this drop-down to No.
- **Gateway URL** - This is the URL to which the Order information will be sent. By default it is populated with <https://secure.authorize.net/gateway/transact.dll>. The test mode drop-down will send a notification to Authorize.net that the Order should be sent to their test site, however, there are test sites featured by Authorize.net in addition to the one designated by Magento. If you prefer to use an alternate test site, you can enter the URL in this field. However, the URL of the live site must be reentered before you take your site live.
- **Debug** - If you select Yes, all requests between Magento and Authorize.net will be saved in the Magento database.
- **Email customer** - Specify whether you want Authorize.net to send emails to your customers on the completion of checkout. This does not influence the order confirmation email and other transactional emails sent from Magento, only the emails sent from your Authorize.net account.
- **Merchant's email** - Designate whether you would like Authorize.net to send you email notifications of orders placed using this payment method by entering the email address associated with your account in this field. If it is left blank, no emails will be sent by Authorize.net
- **Credit Card Types** - Select the options which will appear in the Credit Card Type drop-down on the front-end.
- **Credit Card Verification** - Select whether or not the customer will be required to enter their Credit Card Verification number during checkout.
- **payment from applicable countries** - Select which customers can use this payment method. **All Allowed Countries** means all customers from the default countries list can use this payment method. If you haven't already configured the default list, it can be done by navigating to System > Configuration, clicking the General tab, and selecting each country you wish to allow from the **Allow countries** menu. If you want to

further reduce the number of countries from which your customers will be allowed to use this payment method, select **Specific Countries**. This means that only customers whose billing address includes one of the countries listed in the **Payment from Specific countries** list below can use this payment method.

- **payment from Specific countries** - This list is inactive unless **Specific Countries** is selected from the **Payment from applicable countries** list above. It basically works as a filter, so that this payment method will only be listed for those customers whose billing address is one of these selected countries.
- **Minimum/Maximum Order Total** - These fields also work as filters. This payment method will only be listed for those customers whose order total is above the minimum (if a value is entered) and below the maximum (if a value is entered).
- **Sort Order** - If you are choosing to allow multiple payment methods, this will determine in what order each method is listed in the front-end.

Functionality on Front-End and Back-End

- When the customer selects this method from the payment method list, they will be required to enter the **Name on Card**, select the **Credit Card Type**, enter the **Credit Card Number**, and select the **Expiration Date**. If enabled, they will also be required to enter the **Card Verification Number**.
- The completed Order will display the information entered by the customer in the Payment Information box, except for the Card Verification Number.

PayflowPro

Setup

- **Enabled** - Select Yes for the this method to be listed in the Payment Information section of the checkout. Select No for this method not to be listed.
- **Title** - Enter the name of the payment method as it will appear in the Payment Information list.
- **User** - This value is provided when you sign up for your PayflowPro account.
- **Vendor** - This value is provided when you sign up for your PayflowPro account.
- **Payment Action** - PayflowPro is an online payment method. Therefore, the credit card must be Authorized by the payment gateway when the order is submitted, in order for it to complete. However, you can choose whether you want to **Authorize Only**, or **Authorize and Capture** the payment simultaneously during the Order creation. If you choose to Authorize and Capture, an Invoice will automatically be created for the full quantity of items in the Order. For more information about Invoices, refer to [Chapter 8: Managing Orders](#).
- **VERBOSITY** - The Verbosity level controls the detail of the transaction results (such as declines or errors) which are returned by PayflowPro. Entering **Low** normalizes the transaction results by reducing the variation of the result messages to a set of nine specific possibilities. Entering **Medium** does not normalize the results, allowing for greater variation in these messages. For security purposes, it is recommended that you select Low.

- **TENDER** - Enter the code referring to the method of payment which you will be accepting through PayflowPro. The codes are:
 - A = Automated clearinghouse
 - C = Credit card
 - D = Pinless debit
 - K = Telecheck
 - P = PayPal

Magento is configured to support Tender type C.

- **URL** This is the URL to which the Order information will be sent. By default it is populated with <https://pilot-payflowpro.verisign.com/transaction>. This is the URL for the test site. Before you take your site live you will want to make sure you remove “pilot-” from this URL.
- **New Order Status** - Select the Order Status of all new Orders created using this payment method from the drop-down. The recommended status is Pending, as this is intended to apply to Orders which have not had any actions performed on them, however you can change this to whichever status you prefer.
- **Partner** - This value is provided when you sign up for your PayflowPro account.
- **Password** - This value is provided when you sign up for your PayflowPro account.
- **Debug** - If you select Yes, all requests between Magento and PayflowPro will be saved in the Magento database.
- **Credit Card Types** - Select the options which will appear in the Credit Card Type drop-down on the front-end.
- **Credit Card Verification** - Select whether or not the customer will be required to enter their Credit Card Verification number during checkout.
- **payment from applicable countries** - Select which customers can use this payment method. **All Allowed Countries** means all customers from the default countries list can use this payment method. If you haven't already configured the default list, it can be done by navigating to System > Configuration, clicking the General tab, and selecting each country you wish to allow from the **Allow countries** menu. If you want to further reduce the number of countries from which your customers will be allowed to use this payment method, select **Specific Countries**. This means that only customers whose billing address includes one of the countries listed in the **Payment from Specific countries** list below can use this payment method.
- **payment from Specific countries** - This list is inactive unless **Specific Countries** is selected from the **Payment from applicable countries** list above. It basically works as a filter, so that this payment method will only be listed for those customers whose billing address is one of these selected countries.
- **Minimum/Maximum Order Total** - These fields also work as filters. This payment method will only be listed for those customers whose order total is above the minimum (if a value is entered) and below the maximum (if a value is entered).
- **Sort Order** - If you are choosing to allow multiple payment methods, this will determine in what order each method is listed in the front-end.

Functionality on Front-End and Back-End

- When the customer selects this method from the payment method list, they will be required to enter the **Name on Card**, select the **Credit Card Type**, enter the **Credit Card Number**, and select the **Expiration Date**. If enabled, they will also be required to enter the **Card Verification Number**.
- The completed Order will display the information entered by the customer in the Payment Information box, except for the Card Verification Number.

PayPal Express

Paypal Express is not compatible with Checkout with Multiple Addresses.

Setup

- **Enabled** - Select Yes for the this method to be listed in the Payment Information section of the checkout. Select No for this method not to be listed.
- **Title** - Enter the name of the payment method as it will appear in the Payment Information list.
- **Payment Action** - PayPal Express is an online payment method. Therefore, the credit card must be Authorized by the payment gateway when the order is submitted, in order for it to complete. However, you can choose whether you want to **Authorize Only**, or **Authorize and Capture** the payment simultaneously during the Order creation. If you choose to Authorize and Capture, an Invoice will automatically be created for the full quantity of items in the Order. For more information about Invoices, refer to [Chapter 8: Managing Orders](#).
- **New Order Status** - Select the Order Status of all new Orders created using this payment method from the drop-down. The recommended status is Pending, as this is intended to apply to Orders which have not had any actions performed on them, however you can change this to whichever status you prefer.
- **payment from applicable countries** - Select which customers can use this payment method. **All Allowed Countries** means all customers from the default countries list can use this payment method. If you haven't already configured the default list, it can be done by navigating to System > Configuration, clicking the General tab, and selecting each country you wish to allow from the **Allow countries** menu. If you want to further reduce the number of countries from which your customers will be allowed to use this payment method, select **Specific Countries**. This means that only customers whose billing address includes one of the countries listed in the **Payment from Specific countries** list below can use this payment method.
- **payment from Specific countries** - This list is inactive unless **Specific Countries** is selected from the **Payment from applicable countries** list above. It basically works as a filter, so that this payment method will only be listed for those customers whose billing address is one of these selected countries.
- **Sort Order** - If you are choosing to allow multiple payment methods, this will determine in what order each method is listed in the front-end.
- **Account Information** - To enable this as a payment method, you'll need a Website Payments Pro account. To get one, go to www.paypal.com and click on "Merchant Services". It is free to register. You will receive the

account information for this payment method, and it can be entered in the PayPal Accounts tab, in the **Website Payments Pro** section. PayPal Direct also requires a Website Payments Pro account, and these two methods will share the same account information, so you probably would not enable both methods at the same time.

- **API Username** - Enter your API username (provided by PayPal). You can locate it by clicking on the API Credentials link in your PayPal seller account.
- **API Password** - Enter your API password (provided by PayPal). You can locate it by clicking on the API Credentials link in your PayPal seller account.
- **API Signature** - Enter your API signature (provided by PayPal). You can locate it by clicking on the API Credentials link in your PayPal seller account.
- **Proxy Host** - Enter the proxy host.
- **Proxy Port** - Enter the proxy port.
- **Sandbox Flag** - If testing, select Yes. If using in an active environment, select No.
- **Use Proxy** - This is used if the server has a firewall, and there's no direct access to the PayPal server. You can use a third party server to relay the traffic.

Functionality on Front-End and Back-End

- When the customer selects this method from the payment method list, they will see the message: Your billing address will be ignored and you will be redirected to PayPal website. When they press **Continue**, instead of navigating to the Order Review tab in the checkout, they will be redirected to the PayPal website, where they can review the order information. When the order is submitted in PayPal, the order will be created in Magento, and the customer will be redirected back to Magento.

The screenshot shows a dropdown menu titled "Payment Information" with the following options:

- Credit Card (saved)
- Check / Money order
- Purchase Order
- Credit Card (Authorize.net)
- Credit Card (Payflow Pro)
- Paypal Express

Below the dropdown, a note states: "Your billing address will be ignored and you will be redirected to PayPal website".

At the bottom of the dropdown, there are two additional options:

- Paypal Direct
- Paypal Standard

- The completed Order will display the shipping address information that Magento receives from PayPal Express. PayPal Express does not send billing address information to Magento, and this section will be empty. The Payment information box will only contain the payment method.

PayPal Direct Setup

- **Enabled** - Select Yes for this method to be listed in the Payment Information section of the checkout. Select No for this method not to be listed.
- **Title** - Enter the name of the payment method as it will appear in the Payment Information list.
- **New Order Status** - Select the Order Status of all new Orders created using this payment method from the drop-down. The recommended status is Pending, as this is intended to apply to Orders which have not had any actions performed on them, however you can change this to whichever status you prefer.
- **Payment Action** - PayPal Direct is an online payment method. Therefore, the credit card must be Authorized by the payment gateway when the order is submitted, in order for it to complete. However, you can choose whether you want to **Authorize Only**, or **Authorize and Capture** the payment simultaneously during the Order creation. If you choose to Authorize and Capture, an Invoice will automatically be created for the full quantity of items in the Order. For more information about Invoices, refer to [Chapter 8: Managing Orders](#).
- **Credit Card Types** - Select the options which will appear in the Credit Card Type drop-down on the front-end.
- **payment from applicable countries** - Select which customers can use this payment method. **All Allowed Countries** means all customers from the default countries list can use this payment method. If you haven't already configured the default list, it can be done by navigating to System > Configuration, clicking the General tab, and selecting each country you wish to allow from the **Allow countries** menu. If you want to further reduce the number of countries from which your customers will be allowed to use this payment method, select **Specific Countries**. This means that only customers whose billing address includes one of the countries listed in the **Payment from Specific countries** list below can use this payment method.
- **payment from Specific countries** - This list is inactive unless Specific Countries is selected from the Payment from applicable countries list above. It basically works as a filter, so that this payment method will only be listed for those customers whose billing address is one of these selected countries.
- **Sort Order** - If you are choosing to allow multiple payment methods, this will determine in what order each method is listed in the front-end.
- **Account Information** - To enable this as a payment method, you'll need a Website Payments Pro account. To get one, go to www.paypal.com and click on "Merchant Services". It is free to register. You will receive the account information for this payment method, and it can be entered in the PayPal Accounts tab, in the **Website Payments Pro** section. PayPal Express also requires a Website Payments Pro account, and these two methods will share the same account information, so you probably would not enable both methods at the same time.
 - **API Username** - Enter your API username (provided by PayPal). You can locate it by clicking on the API Credentials link in your PayPal seller account.
 - **API Password** - Enter your API password (provided by PayPal). You can locate it by clicking on the API Credentials link in your PayPal seller account.

- **API Signature** - Enter your API signature (provided by PayPal). You can locate it by clicking on the API Credentials link in your PayPal seller account.
- **Proxy Host** - Enter the proxy host.
- **Proxy Port** - Enter the proxy port.
- **Sandbox Flag** - If testing, select Yes. If using in an active environment, select No.
- **Use Proxy** - This is used if the server has a firewall, and there's no direct access to the PayPal server. You can use a third party server to relay the traffic.

Functionality on Front-End and Back-End

- When the customer selects this method from the payment method list, they will be required to enter the **Name on Card**, select the **Credit Card Type**, enter the **Credit Card Number**, select the **Expiration Date**, and enter the **Card Verification Number**.
- The completed Order will display the information entered by the customer in the Payment Information box, except for the Card Verification Number.

PayPal Standard

Setup

- **Enabled** - Select Yes for this method to be listed in the Payment Information section of the checkout. Select No for this method not to be listed.
- **Title** - Enter the name of the payment method as it will appear in the Payment Information list.
- **Payment Action** - PayPal Standard is an online payment method. Therefore, the credit card must be Authorized by the payment gateway when the order is submitted, in order for it to complete. However, you can choose whether you want to **Authorize Only**, or **Authorize and Capture** the payment simultaneously during the Order creation. If you choose to Authorize and Capture, an Invoice will automatically be created for the full quantity of items in the Order. For more information about Invoices, refer to [Chapter 8: Managing Orders](#).
- **Type** - This indicates the method in which the transaction information is sent to PayPal. Magento currently only supports **Instant Payment Notification (IPN)** because this is the most secure method.
- **New Order Status** - Select the Order Status of all new Orders created using this payment method from the drop-down. The recommended status is Pending, as this is intended to apply to Orders which have not had any actions performed on them, however you can change this to whichever status you prefer.
- **Transaction Type** - This controls the amount of detail from the Order that will be sent to PayPal. **Aggregate Order** will send the amount of the entire Order to PayPal, while **Individual Item** will send a more detailed description of each line item and amount.
- **payment from applicable countries** - Select which customers can use this payment method. **All Allowed Countries** means all customers from the default countries list can use this payment method. If you haven't already configured the default list, it can be done by navigating to System > Configuration, clicking the

General tab, and selecting each country you wish to allow from the **Allow countries** menu. If you want to further reduce the number of countries from which your customers will be allowed to use this payment method, select **Specific Countries**. This means that only customers whose billing address includes one of the countries listed in the **Payment from Specific countries** list below can use this payment method.

- **payment from Specific countries** - This list is inactive unless **Specific Countries** is selected from the **Payment from applicable countries** list above. It basically works as a filter, so that this payment method will only be listed for those customers whose billing address is one of these selected countries.
- **Sort Order** - If you are choosing to allow multiple payment methods, this will determine in what order each method is listed in the front-end.
- **Account Information** - To enable this as a payment method, you'll need a Website Payments Standard account. To get one, go to www.paypal.com and click on Merchant Services. It is free to register. You will receive the account information for this payment method, and it can be entered in the PayPal Accounts tab, in the **Website Payments Standard** section.
 - **Business Name** - Enter the name of your business as it appears in your PayPal seller account.
 - **Business Account** - Enter your Business Account as it appears in your PayPal seller account.
 - **Paypal Logo Image URL** - Enter the URL of the logo which you wish to display in place of the PayPal logo in the PayPal page to which your customers are redirected when checking out with this method.
 - **Sandbox Flag** - If testing, select Yes. If using in an active environment, select No.
 - **Debug Flag** - If you select Yes, all requests between Magento and PayPal will be saved in the Magento database.

Functionality on Front-End and Back-End

- When the customer selects this method from the payment method list, they will see the message: You will be redirected to PayPal website when you place an order. When the customer clicks **Place Order** in the Order Review tab, the Order will be created in Magento, but the payment will not be authorized. The customer will be redirected to the PayPal website, where they will submit the order again. When it is submitted in PayPal, the payment will be authorized and possibly charged (if the Payment Action is configured to do so), and a comment will be added to the Order with the payment approval or decline details.

4 Payment Information

- Credit Card (saved)
- Check / Money order
- Purchase Order
- Credit Card (Authorize.net)
- Credit Card (Payflow Pro)
- Paypal Express
- Paypal Direct
- Paypal Standard

You will be redirected to PayPal website when you place an order.

- The completed Order will display the billing and shipping address information the customer entered in Magento, but the Payment Information box will only display the payment method.

PayPal UK Express Setup

- **Enabled** - Select Yes for this method to be listed in the Payment Information section of the checkout. Select No for this method not to be listed.
- **Title** - Enter the name of the payment method as it will appear in the Payment Information list.
- **Payment Action** - PayPal UK Express is an online payment method. Therefore, the credit card must be Authorized by the payment gateway when the order is submitted, in order for it to complete. However, you can choose whether you want to **Authorize Only**, or **Authorize and Capture** the payment simultaneously during the Order creation. If you choose to Authorize and Capture, an Invoice will automatically be created for the full quantity of items in the Order. For more information about Invoices, refer to [Chapter 8: Managing Orders](#).
- **New Order Status** - Select the Order Status of all new Orders created using this payment method from the drop-down. The recommended status is Pending, as this is intended to apply to Orders which have not had any actions performed on them, however you can change this to whichever status you prefer.
- **payment from applicable countries** - Select which customers can use this payment method. **All Allowed Countries** means all customers from the default countries list can use this payment method. If you haven't already configured the default list, it can be done by navigating to System > Configuration, clicking the General tab, and selecting each country you wish to allow from the **Allow countries** menu. If you want to further reduce the number of countries from which your customers will be allowed to use this payment method, select **Specific Countries**. This means that only customers whose billing address includes one of the countries listed in the **Payment from Specific countries** list below can use this payment method.

- **payment from Specific countries** - This list is inactive unless **Specific Countries** is selected from the **Payment from applicable countries** list above. It basically works as a filter, so that this payment method will only be listed for those customers whose billing address is one of these selected countries.
- **Sort Order** - If you are choosing to allow multiple payment methods, this will determine in what order each method is listed in the front-end.
- Account Information - To enable this as a payment method, you'll need a Website Payments Pro UK account. To get one, go to www.paypal.co.uk. It is free to register. You will receive the account information for this payment method, and it can be entered in the PayPal Accounts tab, in the **Website Payments Pro UK** section. PayPal UK Direct also requires a Website Payments Pro UK account, and these two methods will share the same account information, so you probably would not enable both methods at the same time.
 - **URL** - Enter the URL to which Magento will send the payment information. You can use the pilot URL to enable a test environment.
 - **User** - Enter the User name from your PayPal seller account.
 - **Vendor** - Enter the Vendor information from your PayPal seller account.
 - **Password** - Enter the Password from your PayPal seller account.
 - **Debug Flag** - If you select Yes, all requests between Magento and PayPal will be saved in the Magento database.

Functionality on Front-End and Back-End

- When the customer selects this method from the payment method list, they will see the message: Your billing address will be ignored and you will be redirected to PayPal website. When they press continue, instead of navigating to the Order Review tab in the checkout, they will be redirected to the PayPal website, where they can review the order information. When the order is submitted in PayPal, the order will be created in Magento, and the customer will be redirected back to Magento.
- The completed Order will display the shipping address information that Magento receives from PayPal Express. PayPal Express does not send billing address information to Magento, and this section will be empty. The Payment information box will only display the payment method.

PayPal UK Direct Setup

- **Enabled** - Select Yes for this method to be listed in the Payment Information section of the checkout. Select No for this method not to be listed.
- **Title** - Enter the name of the payment method as it will appear in the Payment Information list.
- **New Order Status** - Select the Order Status of all new Orders created using this payment method from the drop-down. The recommended status is Pending, as this is intended to apply to Orders which have not had any actions performed on them, however you can change this to whichever status you prefer.

- **Payment Action** - PayPal UK Direct is an online payment method. Therefore, the credit card must be Authorized by the payment gateway when the order is submitted, in order for it to complete. However, you can choose whether you want to **Authorize Only**, or **Authorize and Capture** the payment simultaneously during the Order creation. If you choose to Authorize and Capture, an Invoice will automatically be created for the full quantity of items in the Order. For more information about Invoices, refer to [Chapter 8: Managing Orders](#).
- **Credit Card Types** - Select the options which will appear in the Credit Card Type drop-down on the front-end.
- **payment from applicable countries** - Select which customers can use this payment method. **All Allowed Countries** means all customers from the default countries list can use this payment method. If you haven't already configured the default list, it can be done by navigating to System > Configuration, clicking the General tab, and selecting each country you wish to allow from the **Allow countries** menu. If you want to further reduce the number of countries from which your customers will be allowed to use this payment method, select **Specific Countries**. This means that only customers whose billing address includes one of the countries listed in the **Payment from Specific countries** list below can use this payment method.
- **payment from Specific countries** - This list is inactive unless **Specific Countries** is selected from the **Payment from applicable countries** list above. It basically works as a filter, so that this payment method will only be listed for those customers whose billing address is one of these selected countries.
- **Sort Order** - If you are choosing to allow multiple payment methods, this will determine in what order each method is listed in the front-end.
- **Account Information** - To enable this as a payment method, you'll need a Website Payments Pro UK account. To get one, go to www.paypal.co.uk. It is free to register. You will receive the account information for this payment method, and it can be entered in the PayPal Accounts tab, in the **Website Payments Pro UK** section. PayPal UK Express also requires a Website Payments Pro UK account, and these two methods will share the same account information, so you probably would not enable both methods at the same time.
 - **URL** - Enter the URL to which Magento will send the payment information. You can use the pilot URL to enable a test environment.
 - **User** - Enter the User name from your PayPal seller account.
 - **Vendor** - Enter the Vendor information from your PayPal seller account.
 - **Password** - Enter the Password from your PayPal seller account.
 - **Debug Flag** - If you select Yes, all requests between Magento and PayPal will be saved in the Magento database.

Functionality on Front-End and Back-End

- When the customer selects this method from the payment method list, they will be required to enter the **Name on Card**, select the **Credit Card Type**, enter **Credit Card Number**, select the **Expiration Date**, and enter the **Card Verification Number**.

- The completed Order will display the information entered by the customer in the Payment Information box, except for the Card Verification Number.

Google Checkout

Setup

Setting up Google Checkout requires a more intricate configuration than with the other payment types. In addition to configuring your settings in Magento, you must also configure the settings in your Google Checkout seller account, so that it will integrate with Magento. If you wish to deploy Google Checkout in your store, please be aware of these limitations:

- Your website must be serving pages on **standard ports (80 and/or 443)**.
- If you have **PHP CGI** setup, you will need to have **mod_rewrite** enabled. Google-Checkout uses HTTP authorization for callbacks. CGI processes do not receive headers from Apache, so a hack in .htaccess utilizing mod_rewrite was implemented to pass the authorization as an environment variable.
- If you enable Carrier Calculated shipping rates, your packages will be limited to 150lb total. USPS further limits this to 70lb.

Integrating Magento using Google Checkout seller account

The first step to integrating Google Checkout with Magento is to configure your settings in the Google Checkout seller account. The configuration settings are located in the Settings tab, with links to each page in the left column. The following pages contain the most relevant configuration settings for Magento integration. If you don't already have a Google Checkout seller account, you can click the link in the Google API tab in Magento System > Configuration.

- Profile** - Enter your business information as it will appear to your customer in the Google Checkout interface, including your address, **Business Name**, email address, relevant URLs, and policies. When you are finished, click **Save profile** at the bottom of the page.
- Preferences**
 - When an order is placed, your customer's credit card will automatically be authorized by Google Checkout. You can, however, choose whether you solely want to authorize the card, or authorize and **Charge** the credit card at the time of purchase. To find out more about charging credit cards and how to do so after an order is placed, see the [Handling completed orders in Google Checkout](#) section below.
 - Designate whether or not you would like Google Checkout to send you email notifications of any transactions made for completed orders. This is separate from Magento notifications.

When you are finished, click **Save preferences** at the bottom of the page.

- **Integration**
 - **Shopping cart post security** - This checkbox is not mandatory, however we recommend that it be checked.
 - **API Callback URL** - The URL should be in the format:
https://yourserver.com/base_path/index.php/googlecheckout/api. index.php can be omitted if mod_rewrite is enabled. The **Callback method** must be **XML**.
 - **Advanced settings** - These settings will determine what information Google Checkout sends back to Magento to populate in the order page.
 - Should be checked
 - Provide the first name, last name and full name of the buyer and order recipient in separate fields in the new order notification.
 - Return the buyer's ship-to phone number in the new order notification.
 - Return the buyer's billing phone number in the new order notification.
 - Should NOT be checked
 - Notifications must include any amounts involving a Google promotion
 - Require notification acknowledgments to specify the serial number of the notification. This has been witnessed causing problems during testing.
 - On the right side of the page under **Account Information** will be the **Merchant ID** and **Merchant Key**. These will be needed for Google Checkout configuration in Magento.

When you are finished, click **Save** at the bottom of the page. You are now ready to configure your Magento settings in order to complete Google Checkout integration.

Setting up Google Checkout configuration in Magento

Google Checkout

[Signup for Google Checkout](#)

Enable	Yes
Sandbox	Yes
Debug	Yes
Merchant ID	
Merchant Key	
Checkout Image Style	Large - 180x46 (Transparent)
Location	United States
New order status	Pending
Continue Shopping URL	
Optional, leave empty for home page.	
Hide Cart Contents During Checkout	No
If enabled, cart contents will be hidden after clicking on the Google Checkout button in the shopping cart, and restored if "Edit Cart" link was activated.	

Google Checkout Shipping - Merchant Calculated

Enable Merchant Calculated	No
Allowed Methods	Add Shipping Method

Google Checkout Shipping - Carrier Calculated

Enable Carrier Calculated	Yes
Carrier Calculated Methods	FedEx Ground Home Delivery Express Saver Fast Overnight Priority Overnight Standard Overnight 2Day UPS Next Day Air
Delivery Address Category	Commercial
Default price for methods	0
Default Package Width (in)	10
Default Package Height (in)	10
Default Package Length (in)	10

Google Checkout Shipping - Flat Rate

Enable Flat Rate	No
Rate 1 Title	
Rate 1 Amount	
Rate 2 Title	
Rate 2 Amount	
Rate 3 Title	
Rate 3 Amount	

To complete Google Checkout integration, you must now configure your settings in Magento. To do so, navigate to System > Configuration in the admin, and click on the Google API tab in the left column.

- Main Settings - The main settings are all located in the **Google Checkout** section.
 - **Enable** - In order to provide your customer's with the option to checkout via Google Checkout, select Yes. This will add the Google Checkout buttons to the shopping cart, adjacent to the default Magento Checkout button.
 - **Sandbox** - This is the name of Google's test orders interface. If you select No, the Google Checkout button will direct to checkout.google.com. Orders placed here are real, so that when the order is charged, the payment will be processed. If you select Yes, the Google Checkout button will direct to sandbox.google.com/checkout. This has the same checkout format as the real orders interface, but orders placed here are for test purposes only, so that when the order is charged, no payment will actually be processed (as the background text on the site explains).
 - **Debug** - If you select Yes, all requests between Magento and Google Checkout will be saved in the Magento database, as well as Tools > Integration Console in the Google Checkout seller account.
 - **Merchant ID** and **Merchant Key** - These values are provided by Google and are unique for each account. You can find them in your Google Checkout seller account, in Settings > Integration, on the right side of the page under **Account Information**.
 - **Checkout Image Style** - This controls the style of the Google Checkout button. There are three sizes (small, medium and large), and a transparent and white version for each (depending on the background of your site).
 - **Location** - This selection depends on which type of seller account you have set up with Google. Select United States if you have a U.S. account, and United Kingdom if you have a U.K. account. These are the only countries supported by Google Checkout at this time.
 - **New order status** - The selection here will determine the order status of all new orders created using Google Checkout.
 - **Continue Shopping URL** - When the customer has finished placing their order in Google Checkout and clicks the **Return to [Business Name]** button, they will be redirected to this URL.
 - It can be a URL part of CMS page, product or category, such as thank-you-for-shopping, apparel/specials.
 - It can be any other URL, such as <http://www.google.com>.
 - If it is left blank, they will automatically be redirected to your home page.
 - **Hide Cart Contents During Checkout** - This will hide the cart contents if your customer is in the Google Checkout page and clicks the browser Back button to return to the Magento Shopping Cart page.
- Shipping Settings - There are three options with which you can configure shipping in Google Checkout.
 - **Merchant Calculated** - This option cannot be enabled with any other option at the same time, or your customers will receive an error message when they attempt to checkout.
 - **Enable Merchant Calculated** - If you select Yes, this will be the option available for the customer to select.

- **Allowed Methods** - Each time you click **Add Shipping Method**, you will be able to select a shipping method from the drop-down list and enter a **Default Price** for each method. All shipping methods that you add will display in the **Shipping & Handling** drop-down in Google Checkout.
- **Carrier Calculated**
 - **Enable Carrier Calculated** - If you select Yes, this option will be available for the customer to select.
 - **Carrier Calculated Methods** - All shipping methods that you select from this multiple select menu will display in the Shipping & Handling drop-down in Google Checkout.
 - **Delivery Address Category** - Choose type of address of your usual customers.
 - **Default price for methods** - Google Checkout requires a default price for shipping, however this will be overwritten by the prices returned from the carriers.
 - **Default Package Width/Height/Length (in)** - Google Checkout requires default dimensions of a package for Carrier Calculated rates.
- **Flat Rate** - This option allows you to enter up to three methods from which the customer can choose.
 - **Enable Flat Rate** - If you select Yes, this option will be available for the customer to select.
 - **Rate 1/2/3 Title** - This is the name of the shipping method as it will appear in the Shipping & Handling drop-down.
 - **Rate 1/2/3 Amount** - This is the price of the shipping method as it will appear in the Shipping & Handling drop-down.

When you are finished, click **Save config**, and your customers will now be able to checkout using Google Checkout.

Functionality on Front-End and Back-End Customer Checkout with Google Checkout

Once you have enabled Google Checkout, your customer will now have this checkout method available to them in the shopping cart. There will be a Google Checkout button displayed adjacent to the default checkout button. When they click it, they will be directed to Google's checkout interface. This is a completely separate process from Magento's default checkout process.

1. First, your customer will be asked to log into their Google account. This is separate from any account they may have created within your store. The information they provide here, such as the name, email, and addresses, will be sent back to Magento and display in the order information.
2. Magento will upload all products in your customer's shopping cart to the Google Checkout page, including quantity and price. This cannot be updated directly from Google Checkout, as it can from Magento checkout. In order to modify quantities or remove items, the customer must navigate back to their cart in Magento and make these edits.

3. Your customer can choose their preferred **Shipping & Handling** method from the drop-down menu. The available methods in the menu can be configured in the Google API page in the Magento admin.
4. The tax will be calculated according to the guidelines established in the Magento admin, in Sales > Tax. The tax guidelines established in Settings > Tax setup in the Google Checkout seller account will not have any bearing on the order.
5. If your customer chooses to **Keep my email address confidential**, their real email address will not be provided to Magento. The email address displayed in the order page will have a sandbox.google.com domain name, and the order confirmation sent here will be directed by Google to the user's actual email address.
6. If your customer chooses **I want to receive promotional email from [Business Name]** it should subscribe the email address received from Google Checkout to the store newsletter.
7. When your customer is done, they will press the **Place your order now** button. This will automatically send a record of the order to your seller account in Google, and Google will send this information to Magento as well, where a record of the order will be created in Sales > Orders. Your customer will see an order confirmation message, and a link to return to your site. Additionally, if you have email notification enabled, your customer can receive order confirmation emails from both Google and Magento.

Handling completed orders in Google Checkout

As discussed in [Chapter 8: Managing Orders](#), once an order is completed, you will have the ability to create Invoices, Shipments, Credit Memos, and cancellations. For orders placed with Google Checkout, there is partial integration of these tasks as well. Updating the order in Magento will update the order in Google Checkout, and vice versa. In Google Checkout, a list of your orders will be displayed in the Orders tab. Changes can be made from the orders list (using the button in the **Action** column), or the orders page, which can be viewed by clicking on the Order Number.

- Invoice
 - When creating an invoice in Magento for an order placed in Google Checkout, you will have the option to **Capture Payment**. If you choose to do so, the order will be automatically be **Charged** in Google Checkout. If you create a partial invoice (the invoice contains only some of the quantity in the order) and capture the payment, Google Checkout will make a partial charge. The remaining balance can be charged either from Magento or Google Checkout. Because Google Checkout does not have an equivalent functionality to the Void feature in Magento, voiding an order in Magento will have no affect on the order in Google Checkout.
 - If the order is charged from Google Checkout, Magento will automatically generate an invoice with a captured payment. Invoice creation will occur whether the order is charged at the time of purchase, or

charged manually after the order is placed. If the order is charged for a partial amount in Google Checkout (which can only be done manually), no invoice will be created in Magento.

- Shipment
 - When creating a shipment in Magento for an order placed in Google Checkout, a shipment will automatically be created in Google Checkout. This includes partial shipments as well. However, Google Checkout does not recognize partial shipments, so there will be no indication in Google Checkout that the shipment is only partial. If multiple shipments are made in Magento, each with tracking information, the single shipment in Google Checkout will update to list the multiple tracking numbers.
 - If a shipment is created in Google Checkout, no shipment will be created in Magento.
- Credit Memo
 - If a credit memo is created in Magento, and you press the **Refund** button (as opposed to the **Refund Offline** button), the order will be refunded in Google Checkout. This includes partial credit memos.
 - If an order is refunded in Google Checkout, no credit memo will be created in Magento.
- Cancel
 - If you cancel an order in Magento, it will not automatically be canceled in Google Checkout.
 - If you cancel an order in Google Checkout, it will automatically be canceled in Magento. If some of the items have already been invoiced and/or shipped, only the remaining items will be canceled in Magento. If all of the items have already been invoiced and/or shipped, Google Checkout still allows you to cancel the order, however this will have no effect in Magento.

Chapter 5: Promotions, Marketing and Content Pages

Customer Personalization

In order to maximize the promotion of your products, Magento offers several great ways for your customers to keep track of products and changes in your site. Giving your customers control over which aspects of your site they can monitor gives them a more personalized experience and encourages them to be more involved in your site in general.

Wishlist

The Wishlist is one of the more well known promotion features. It allows your customers to designate products that they wish to purchase (or have someone purchase for them) at a later date. Having your customers able to save products to a Wishlist greatly increases the likelihood that they will remember the products that interested them. To enable Wishlists in your site, navigate to System > Configuration, click on the Wishlist tab in the left column, and select Yes from the Enabled drop-down. This will enable the **Add to Wishlist** link for every product listed in the category pages, as well as in all product pages. When a customer clicks this link for a given product, they will be directed to their personal Wishlist page (if they are not logged in, they will be prompted to do so, or register first, and then they will be directed to the Wishlist page). This page lists all items that your customers have added.

My Wishlist

 **Barcelona Bamboo Platform Bed** was successfully added to your wishlist. Click [here](#) to continue shopping

Product	Comment	Added On	
 Barcelona Bamboo Platform Bed \$ 99.00	Remember to get the King Size.	Apr 17, 2008	Add to Cart Remove Item

[Share Wishlist](#)

[Add All to Cart](#)

[Update Wishlist](#)

For each product, there is a field for comments where your customers can make personal notes for each product, the date the product was added to the Wishlist, and a link to **Add to Cart**. At the bottom of the Wishlist is the option to **Add All to Cart**, and **Share Wishlist**. The Share Wishlist feature is a good word of mouth tool for customers to promote products they like to their friends, as well as a way to informs their friends about products that they would like to receive as a gift. Configuration for the Share Wishlist feature is in the same page as above. Select the **Email Template** which the Share Wishlist email will use. The Email Sender is the address from which the Share Wishlist email will be sent. For more information on how to configure these email templates and addresses, refer to [Chapter 6: Customers](#). There is also a Wishlist quick view located in the right column of category, product, and CMS pages, where your customers can view a summary of the products in the wishlist, and add each product to the cart. The Wishlist can be accessed via this quick view, the **My Wishlist** link in the header, or via the **My Account** page. Additionally, the Wishlist has several more features that are discussed in more detail in other sections. There are RSS feeds available for your customers and the friends with whom they share the wishlist, which will be described in more detail below. The Wishlist can be accessed in the admin in a customer's page and during admin Order creation, where products can be moved between it and the Order, which will be covered more in [Chapter 8: Managing Orders](#).

Compare Products

The Compare Products feature is a useful way for customers to quickly compare product attribute information in a side-by-side view, and it similar to the Wishlist in several respects. The **Add to Compare** link appears in category

and product pages, however when the link is clicked, your customers will not be directed to the Compare page. The product will be added to the Compare Products quick view (also in the right column), and the Compare page will only be accessed when the **Compare Items** button is clicked in the quick view.



This produces a pop-up window, with a table of all products in the list. Each product receives a separate column and each attribute name receives a separate row. You can designate which attributes will display in this page via the **Comparable on Front-end** drop-down in the Attributes page ([refer back to Chapter 3](#)). The products in the Compare page do not necessarily have to belong to the same Attribute Set, or contain values for all the same attributes. If one product does not have a value for an attribute which another product in the Compare page contains, it will simply be left blank. Within this page, your customers will also have the ability to add products to the Wishlist or cart. Additionally, like the Wishlist, you will have the ability to access the Products in Compare List during admin Order creation in order to move products into the Order.

Note: Only Simple Products can be added to the Compare Products list.

	 <p>Barcelona Bamboo Platform Bed ★★★☆☆ (3) \$ 99.00 Add to Cart Add to My Wishlist</p>	 <p>New England Cottage Oakwood Bed \$ 145.00 Add to Cart Add to My Wishlist</p>
Dimensions	84" (width) x 86" (length)	82" (width) x 88" (length)
Material	Bamboo	Oak
Size	King	King
Mattress Elevation	12"	18"
	\$ 99.00 Add to Cart Add to Wishlist	\$ 145.00 Add to Cart Add to Wishlist

Recently Viewed/Compared Products

When a customer removes an item from the Compare Products list, Magento continues to keep track of the item, so that your customers can easily find it if they decide to purchase it later on. Also in the right column, towards the bottom of the page, is the Recently Compared Products list. It contains a link to the page of each product which has recently been removed from the Compare Products list. There is also a Recently Viewed Products list, which works the same way, and lists all products for which your customers have recently viewed the pages. Both of these can also be accessed in the admin during admin Order creation, just like the features above, where you can move products into the Order. To configure the settings for these two features, navigate to System > Configuration, and click the Catalog tab in the left column. In the **Show for Current** drop-down, select the level at which these lists will save product information. For example, if you select Website, these lists will show all products compared or viewed within the same Website. Additionally, Magento by default comes with a pregenerated Home page CMS page, which has a prepopulated Layout Update XML field (more details about this [later in the chapter](#)), containing the code that allows both the Recently Viewed Products and Recently Compared Products to display at the bottom of the Home page so that your customers can see lists of these products very prominently each time they visit your site.

New Products

Along with the Recently Viewed and Compared Products, there is also code contained in that Layout Update XML to display new products. [Chapter 3](#) described the process for entering the **Set Product as New from/to Date** when creating a new product, and this is where that date range is presented. If you have chosen to use this XML code, all products with a date range including the current date will display at the bottom of the home page (or any other page to where you may have copied the XML code), above the Recently Viewed and Compared Products. This is a great promotion tool to let your customers know about newly added products to your site each time they arrive at your home page. Additionally, you can redesign a product page or change some attributes and then set it as new in order to rekindle some interest in that product.

New Products

		
Ottoman	Chair	Couch
\$ 299.99	\$ 129.99	\$ 599.99
Add to Cart	Add to Cart	Add to Cart
Add to Wishlist	Add to Wishlist	Add to Wishlist
Add to Compare	Add to Compare	Add to Compare

Your Recently Viewed

		
Barcelona Bamboo Platform Bed	New England Cottage Bed	Apple MacBook Pro
\$ 99.00	\$ 145.00	MA464LL/A 15.4" Notebook PC
Add to Cart	Add to Cart	Add to Cart
Add to Wishlist	Add to Wishlist	Add to Wishlist
Add to Compare	Add to Compare	Add to Compare

Your Recently Compared

	
Barcelona Bamboo Platform Bed	New England Cottage Bed
\$ 99.00	\$ 145.00
Add to Cart	Add to Cart
Add to Wishlist	Add to Wishlist
Add to Compare	Add to Compare

RSS Feeds

In addition to the XML update for newly added products, the new product date range also controls which products will appear in the New Products RSS feed. This is actually just one of several RSS Feeds to which your customers can subscribe, keeping them informed about changes to your site, or even changes to your customers' personal accounts that they have initiated themselves. In the front-end, there are three different places where customers can sign up for RSS feeds. If you navigate to System > Configuration, click on the **RSS Feeds** tab in the left column, and Select Enable in the **Rss Config** section, an RSS link with the RSS logo  will appear in the footer of your site on the front-end. This is the first of the three locations where customers can sign up for RSS Feeds. This link will contain links to any of the Catalog section RSS Feeds that you have enabled, including the New Products feed. If you do not have any Catalog feeds enabled, this page will be blank. Your customers can click on each enabled feed link and subscribe to it individually. Depending on which feed reader they choose, the feed may include all corresponding items, or only the most recent 20. For example, for the Special Products feed, one reader may display all products that currently have a special price, whereas another reader may display only the 20 most recently created specials.

The second location is in the Wishlist, as referenced in the Wishlist section above. First, however, you must select Enable in the Wishlist section of the Configuration page. This will create an RSS FEED link in the Wishlist page, so your customers can subscribe to a feed listing the items currently in their Wishlist. However, since your customers already have access to the list of items currently in their Wishlist (that is, by logging in to their account and viewing their Wishlist page), the RSS feature will probably be more useful for sharing the Wishlist with friends. In the Share Wishlist feature, which was described in the Wishlist section above, there is a checkbox with a description reading, "Check this checkbox if you want to add a link to an rss feed to your wishlist." This checkbox will only appear if the Wishlist RSS is enabled. If it is checked, the Share Wishlist email that is sent will include a link so that your customers' friends can subscribe to feeds of your customers' Wishlists, allowing your customers' friends to stay current with great gift ideas.

Share Your Wishlist

Sharing Information

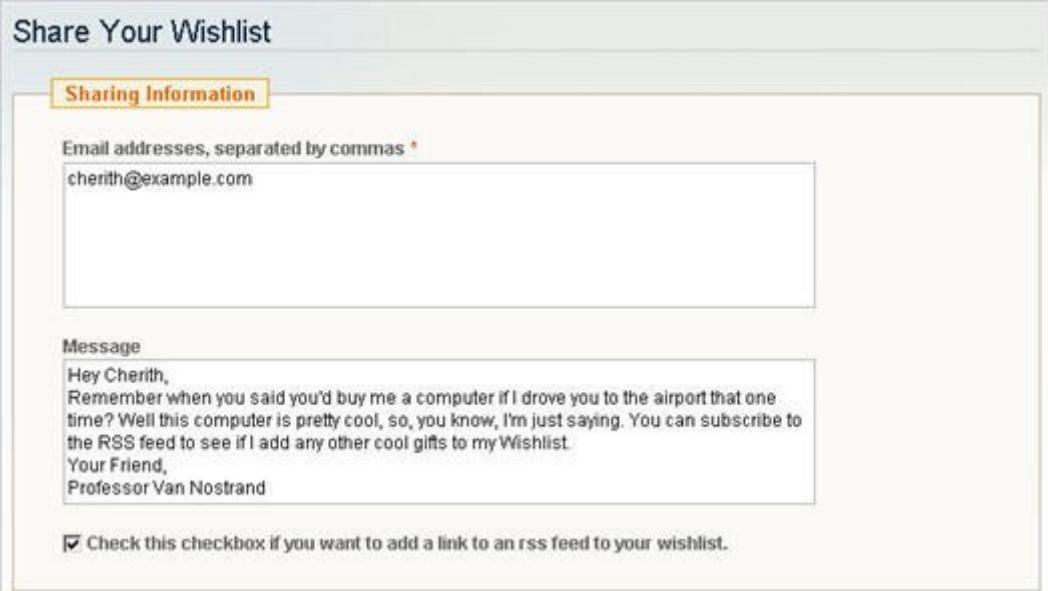
Email addresses, separated by commas *

cherith@example.com

Message

Hey Cherith,
Remember when you said you'd buy me a computer if I drove you to the airport that one time? Well this computer is pretty cool, so, you know, I'm just saying. You can subscribe to the RSS feed to see if I add any other cool gifts to my Wishlist.
Your Friend,
Professor Van Nostrand

Check this checkbox if you want to add a link to an rss feed to your wishlist.



The third location is in the Order page of the My Account section. First, however, you must select Enable in the **Customer Order Status Notification** drop-down in the Configuration page. This will create a **Subscribe to Order Status** link at the top of the page of every Order that your customer has placed. They must enter the My Account page, and click on an individual Order in order to access this feed link. When a customer signs up for this feed, they will only be receiving order status updates for the Order from which they accessed the link. This way, they have the option to keep track only of the Orders in which they are interested. Whenever you update the status of that Order, your customer will receive an RSS feed notifying them of the change. There is more information on the My Account page and all of its features in [the next chapter](#), and more information about order statuses in [Chapter 8: Managing Orders](#).

Tier Pricing

Tier Pricing is a promotional tool that allows a store owner to price items differently for higher quantities. This is an effective way to move more merchandise and appeal to customers who buy more than one product at a time. When a customer adds a certain quantity of a product to their cart, the price is automatically changed to reflect the discount.

1. In the Magento Admin Panel, navigate to Catalog > Manage Products.
2. Find the product that you want to add tier pricing to (or create a new product) and click **Edit** in the Action column.

- Locate the Prices tab on the left and click on it.

The screenshot shows the 'Prices' tab interface. At the top, there are input fields for 'Price' (16.99 USD), 'Special Price' (empty), 'Special Price From Date' (empty), 'Special Price To Date' (empty), and 'Cost' (empty). Below these is a table titled 'Tier Price' with columns: Customer Group, Qty, Price, and Action. The table contains four rows, each with 'ALL GROUPS' in the Customer Group column, a quantity from 2 to 5, and a price from 15.99 down to 9.99. Each row has a 'Delete' button in the Action column. At the bottom right of the grid is a 'Add Tiers' button.

Tier Price	Customer Group	Qty	Price	Action
	ALL GROUPS	2	15.99	Delete
	ALL GROUPS	3	14.49	Delete
	ALL GROUPS	4	12.49	Delete
	ALL GROUPS	5	9.99	Delete

- Click the button that says **Add Tier**.
- Designate which customers will receive the tiered price in the **Customer Group** drop-down. You can make this tier available to only one Customer Group, or ALL GROUPS. There is more information about Customer Groups in [Chapter 6: Customers](#). *Tip: To apply a tier to multiple groups, but not all groups, create multiple tiers, each with the same Qty and Price information, and select a different customer group in each.*
- Enter the **Qty** at which you wish to apply the discounted price.
- Enter the **Price**. This is the price that each item will cost when the customer chooses to purchase the specified quantity or greater.
- If you want to add multiple tiers, press the Add Tier button again. The prices on the front-end will take precedence from the highest to lowest quantity. Therefore, if you have a tier for quantity 5 and one for quantity 10, and a customer adds 5, 6, 7, 8, or 9 items to the cart, they will receive the discounted price you specified for the quantity 5 tier. As soon as they add the 10th item, the discounted price specified for the quantity 10 tier will supersede the quantity 5 tier, and that discounted price will apply instead.
- Press **Save** to save the changes and have these changes reflected on the front-end. On the product info page, the percentage that your customers can save will calculate automatically and display next to each tier, as displayed below.

Buy 2 for \$ 15.99 each and **save 6%**
Buy 3 for \$ 14.49 each and **save 15%**
Buy 4 for \$ 12.49 each and **save 27%**
Buy 5 for \$ 9.99 each and **save 42%**

Availability: In stock.

\$ 16.99

Qty:

Add to Cart

OR

[Add to Wishlist](#)
[Add to Compare](#)

On the product listing pages, the best available deal will display below the regular price.



CN Clogs
Beach/Garden Clog

\$ 16.99
As low as: **\$ 9.99**

Add to Cart

If you don't want one of the tiers, press **Delete Tier** next the tier you want to get rid of.

Catalog Price Rules

There are two types of price rules in Magento: **Catalog Price Rules** and **Shopping Cart Price Rules**. Catalog Price Rules are implemented into product price before they are added to the cart, while Shopping Cart Price Rules are applied in the shopping cart.

Great For

- Storewide Sales
- Customer Group-Targeted Sale

To create a new rule, navigate to Promotions > Catalog Price Rules and select **Add New Rule**.

Rule Information

The screenshot shows the 'Catalog Price Rule' interface with the 'New Rule' tab selected. The 'General Information' section is active. The 'Rule Name' is 'Sony Products'. The 'Description' is 'Logged in customers can save 15% off all Sony products over \$100 in the month of April.' The 'Status' is 'Active'. The 'Customer Groups' dropdown is open, showing 'NOT LOGGED IN', 'General', 'Wholesale', and 'Retailer', with 'Retailer' highlighted. The 'From Date' is '04/01/08' and the 'To Date' is '04/30/08'. The 'Priority' is '1'.

1. Enter a **Rule Name** and **Description** for the price rule.
2. Enable it by selecting **Active** from the **Status** dropdown.
3. Select the **Customer Groups** to which you want the rule to apply. There is more information about Customer Groups in [Chapter 6: Customers](#).
4. Define the date range for the promotion to be in effect. If you leave the date range empty the rule will be enabled as soon as it is created.
5. Set the promotion's priority. This is useful if you have two catalog price rules enabled at once. This priority tells Magento in which order to process the rules. This is important because it may affect the amount of the discount. For example, you have two rules: "10% off T-shirts" and "\$1 off all Blue items". If you prioritize the 10% rule first, a \$20 Blue T-shirt would first receive a 10% discount (of \$2) and then a \$1 discount. However, if you prioritize the \$1 rule first, a \$20 blue T-shirt would first receive a \$1 discount and then a 10% discount (of \$1.90). The priority affects the total discount offered.

Conditions

Once you have set up the information for the price rule you can set the Rule's Conditions.

- If you're creating a rule which requires two conditions (for example, the product must be manufactured by Sony **AND** the price **must** be over \$100), select "If **ALL** of these Conditions are TRUE". If you wanted the discount to take effect if the product is manufactured by Sony **OR** if the product is over \$100, you would select "If **ANY** of these conditions are TRUE." Additionally, you can change **TRUE** to **FALSE**, which will make the rule apply to the exact opposite situation. For example, "If **ALL** of these conditions are **FALSE**" would

mean that the rule would apply to all products where the manufacturer is NOT Sony, and the price is LESS THAN \$100.

- When you click the green + button, a drop-down will appear. You can select either Conditions Combination (see below for more details about this), or one **Product Attribute** from the list of all existing Attributes. The middle rule ('is,' 'is not,' 'equals or greater than,' etc.) defines the relation between the attribute and the option. Finally, enter the value of the attribute option. Different attributes will require you to enter the option value in a different manner. For example, Manufacturer will product a drop-down, contained all the existing options that you previously defined when you created the Manufacturer attribute. Price, however, will have an open text field where you can manually enter the price.
- To add more rules, keep pressing the green + button. Each condition further limits the number products to which this discount applies. To remove a condition, click the red X button.

New Rule

Conditions (leave blank for all products)

If **ALL** of these conditions are **TRUE**:

Manufacturer **is** **Sony**

Price **equals or greater than** **100**

- If you select **Conditions Combination** instead of one of the Product Attributes, you can create and different set of ALL/ANY and TRUE/FALSE conditions within the overall condition. For example, in the first condition you can establish that the Manufacturer is Sony. In the second condition, you can create a Conditions Combination, where you change ALL to ANY. Within this "subcondition" you set the Price equal or greater than \$100, and the Weight equal or less than 5 lbs. With this Conditions Combination, the rule will apply if the Manufacturer is Sony, AND either the Price is \$100 or more OR the weight is 5 lbs or less.

New Rule

Conditions (leave blank for all products)

If **ALL** of these conditions are **TRUE**:

Manufacturer **is** **Sony**

If **ANY** of these conditions are **TRUE**:

Price **equals or greater than** **100**

Weight **equals or less than** **5**

Actions

Now that you have the Conditions set, you can create the **Actions**. This defines what Magento actually does to the product matching your conditions. This is where the discount is defined.

- **Apply** - Select how you want the discount applied to the product (**By Percentage of the original price**, **By Fixed Amount**, **To Percentage of the original price**, or **To Fixed Amount**). The difference between By and To is that By subtracts the Discount amount from the original price, whereas To sets the final discounted price to the Discount amount. For example, if a product costs \$100, and a discount amount of 15 is applied By Percentage of the original price, the final price would be \$85. If the discount amount of 15 was applied To Percentage of the original price, the final price would be \$15 (in this example, you would choose By Percentage).
- **Discount amount** - Enter the numerical value of the discount, which will be either a percentage or fixed monetary amount, depending on what you selected in the drop-down above.
- **Stop further rules processing** - If you have multiple promotions active on the same products at once, and you don't want another rule to interfere with this one, you would select Yes here. This will cause Magento to ignore any other existing rules with a lower priority once this rule has been calculated. For example, if you have a storewide discount of \$5 that you don't want to apply to products in this promotion, you would select Yes here, set the priority of this rule higher than that of the other existing rule, and any products matching the conditions established in your new rule would no longer receive the \$5 discount from the other existing rule.

When you are finished, you can click either **Save and Apply** or **Save Rule**. Save and Apply activates the rule immediately after creating it, so that the price change will be displayed on eligible products in the front-end. Save Rule saves without activating. If you click this, you can go back and apply the rule later by clicking on it in the Catalog Price Rules grid and clicking Save and Apply, or by clicking the **Apply Rules** button on the Catalog Price Rules page, which will activate all existing rules. If you wish, you can allow customers to be alerted of new Catalog Price Rules via RSS feeds. There is more information about RSS Feeds [earlier in this chapter](#).

IMPORTANT: Catalog price rules require periodical execution of scheduled task. Please refer to this article for information on cronjob setup:[How to setup a cron job](#)

Shopping Cart Price Rules

The other kind of price rule – **Shopping Cart Price Rules** – is applied when the customer reaches the shopping cart. They can be enacted either with or without a coupon code, and include features not found in traditional coupon tools. Shopping Cart Price Rules are very similar to Catalog Price Rules (CPRs), with a few changes and additions. For those aspects which are the same as Catalog Price Rules, please refer back to that section for a more detailed description. To create Shopping cart Price Rules, navigate to Promotions > Shopping Cart Price Rules and select **Add New Rule**. As discussed in [Chapter 3](#), this tool can be very useful to market Grouped Products. To illustrate this, let's revisit the example of the 3-piece suit introduced there.

Rule Information

The screenshot shows the 'New Rule' configuration page for a Shopping Cart Price Rule. The left sidebar lists sections: Rule Information (selected), Conditions, and Actions. The main area is titled 'General Information'. It includes fields for Rule Name ('10% off 3-piece suits'), Description ('Customers can receive a 10% discount if they purchase all three pieces of the 3-piece suit in the same order.'), Status ('Enabled'), Customer Groups ('NOT LOGGED IN, General, Wholesale, Retailer'), and other optional settings like Coupon code, Uses per coupon, and Priority. A 'Public In RSS Feed' checkbox is also present. The 'Customer Groups' dropdown is expanded, showing the selected group 'NOT LOGGED IN' highlighted in blue.

- **Rule Name** - Same as CPRs
- **Description** - Same as CPRs
- **Status** - Same as CPRs
- **Customer Groups** - Same as CPRs
- **Coupon Code** - If a code is not entered the rule will take effect once the customer reaches the cart without any action taken. If a code is entered, the customer will have to enter that code to receive the discount.
- **Uses per coupon** - This is the maximum amount of times the Rule can be used total. This limit will apply whether or not you require a coupon code. If it is left blank, there will be no limit.

- **Uses per customer** - This is the maximum amount of times the Rule can be used per customer. This limit will apply whether or not you require a coupon code. If it is left blank, there will be no limit.
- **From/To Date** - Same as CPRs
- **Priority** - Same as CPRs
- **Public In RSS Feed** - If you wish, you can allow customers to be alerted of new Shopping Cart Price Rules via RSS feeds. If you have enabled this feature, you can determine here whether or not users who subscribe to the RSS Feed will be alerted about this particular Rule. There is more information about RSS Feeds [earlier in this chapter](#).

Conditions

This is very different from CPRs, however there is some overlap. To begin with, the overall condition is in the same structure: If ALL/ANY of these conditions are TRUE/FALSE. However, clicking the green + button presents you with a different set of options.

- **Product Attribute Combination** - Selecting this will create a “subcondition” with a different format from the ALL/ANY and TRUE/FALSE overall condition. It will state: If an item is FOUND/NOT FOUND in the cart with ALL/ANY of these conditions true. This subcondition applies directly to the products within the cart, therefore when you click on the green + button, you will have the same Product Attribute options that exist when created CPRs. In addition to this, you will have the choice to select a **Cart Item Attribute** instead, including **Price in cart**, **Quantity in cart**, and **Row total in cart**. These options differ from the Product Attributes because they define aspects of the product as they exist in the cart, which may differ from the aspects that you defined when creating the product.

Apply the rule only if the following conditions are met (leave blank for all products)

If ALL of these conditions are TRUE:

If an item is FOUND in the cart with ALL of these conditions true:

SKU is black jacket_1

If an item is FOUND in the cart with ALL of these conditions true:

SKU is black vest_1

If an item is FOUND in the cart with ALL of these conditions true:

SKU is black vest_1

- **Conditions Combination** - Same as CPRs

- **Cart Attribute** - Cart Attributes describe a condition within the shopping cart, rather than within a particular product. This ranges from the **Subtotal** to the **Shipping Country**. Like with Product Attributes, you will need to define the option, and the relationship to the option. For Shipping Country, the option would be the name of the country (which you would select from a drop-down listing all allowed countries in your site) and the relationship to this option would be **is** or **is not**.

Actions

- **Apply** - Select how you want the discount applied to the product (**Percentage of product price discount**, **Fixed amount discount**, **Fixed amount discount for whole cart**, or **Buy X get Y free**).
- **Discount amount** - Same as CPRs
- **Maximum Qty Discount is Applied to** - You can limit how many units of each line item will receive this discount. If you select 5, each line item with a quantity greater than 5 will only receive a discount for five of the items, and the remaining quantity will be calculated at the normal rate.
- **Discount Qty Step (Buy X)** - This field only works depending on which option you selected from the Apply drop-down. This field is not applicable to the 3-piece suit example, so it will be discussed using different examples.
 - **Percent of product price discount** - If you selected this option, the Buy X field determines the quantities that your customers will have to purchase in order to receive a percentage discount. For example, if you sell an item at whatever quantity the customer prefers, but you receive the item in packs of six, and would like to offer a discount to the customer for every factor of 6 items that they buy, you would enter 6 into this field. The product costs \$5, and the discount percentage is 10. If the customer buys 1-5 items, they will receive no discount. If they buy 6-11 items, they will receive a 10% of $\$5 \times 6$ discount (\$3). If they buy 12-17 items, they will receive a 10% of $\$5 \times 12$ discount (\$6), and so on. This way, they are encouraged to buy items in a factor of 6, and they are allowed to buy additional quantity, but they just won't receive any discount for that additional quantity.
 - **Buy X get Y free** - If you selected this option, the Buy X field determines the quantity that your customers will have to purchase in order to receive free item(s). These quantities will be a factor of the number entered into this field. The amount of free items they receive is determined in the Discount amount field. For example, if you want to give your customer 2 free items for every 5 that they buy, you would enter 5 in this field and 2 in the Discount amount field. If the customer buys 1-5 items they will receive no free items. The 6th and 7th items that they add to the cart will be free. The next 5 items that they buy must be paid for, and the 13th and 14th items that they add to the cart will be free, and so on.
- **Free ground shipping** - Select whether you want to combine the coupon amount with a free shipping offer. You can select **For matching items only** to offer free shipping only to specific items in the cart, or **For shipment with matching items** to offer free shipping for the entire order when the designated items are present.
- **Stop further rules processing** - Same as CPRs

- **Apply the rule only to cart items matching the following conditions** - This is similar to the Product Attribute Combination option that you can set in the Conditions tab. You can select from the same list of Cart Item Attributes and Product Attributes. This determines which items in the cart will receive the discount defined above when the conditions defined in the Conditions tab are met. If you leave this section blank, the discount will apply to the entire cart.

Update prices using the following information

Apply	Percent of product price discount
Discount amount *	10
Maximum Qty Discount is Applied to	0
Discount Qty Step (Buy X)	
Free shipping	No
Stop further rules processing	No

Apply the rule only to cart items matching the following conditions (leave blank for all items)

If **ANY** of these conditions are **TRUE**:

- SKU **is black jacket_1**
- SKU **is black vest_1**
- SKU **is black pants_1**
-

This

way, only the three specific items listed will receive the 10% discount. If the 3-piece suit is purchased in the same order as other items, the discount will not apply to any of the other items.

- When you are finished, click **Save Rule**.

Newsletters

Newsletter Configuration

The first step to creating newsletters is to configure the newsletter settings for your site. To do so, navigate to System > Configuration, and click on the Newsletter tab in the left column

- **Unsubscription/Success/Confirmation Email Sender** - Designate the address from which Unsubscription/Success/Confirmation Emails will be sent to your customers. For more information on how to configure these email addresses, refer to [Chapter 6: Customers](#).

- **Unsubscription/Success/Confirmation Email Template** - Designate the template of the Unsubscription/Success/Confirmation Emails. For more information on how to configure these templates, refer to [Chapter 6: Customers](#).
- **Need to Confirm** - Select whether or not you customers will need to send an email confirmation reply in order to activate their newsletter subscriptions.

Newsletter Templates

Before sending a newsletter, create a newsletter template. You can create and save as many of these as needed for any situation, whether it be an annual holiday newsletter, or weekly product updates. To do so, navigate to Newsletter > Newsletter Templates, and click **Add New Template** in the top right of the page.

Template Information	
Template Name *	Awesome Newsletter
Template Subject *	Awesomeness
Sender Name *	
Sender Email *	
Template Content *	<pre>This is just a newsletter to remind all of you how awesome you are. <!-- This tag is for unsubscribe link --> Follow this link to unsubscribe </pre>

- **Template Name** - This is for internal purposes, to help you differentiate between templates.
- **Template Subject** - This is the subject of the email that will be sent to your customers for a newsletter using this template.
- **Sender Name** - This is the name of the sender of the email that will be sent to your customers for a newsletter using this template.
- **Sender Email** - This is the email address of the sender of the email that will be sent to your customers for a newsletter using this template.
- **Template Content** - This is the body of your email. It can be written in HTML format. If you want to include a static block into the email, use the code:

```
{block type="cms/block" block_id="block-id"}
```

You can read more about Static Blocks [later in the chapter](#). All new templates will automatically be populated with an unsubscribe link in the Content field, however you can choose to remove this link if you wish. If you click **Convert to Plain Text**, you can see the content of your email without the HTML tags. You can then click **Return HTML Version** to add the tags back again. This is a good way to check the text without having to sort through HTML tags, which can be confusing.

- To view the content with the HTML tags formatted as your subscribers will see it, click **Preview Template**.
- When you are finished, click **Save Template**.
- Once you have saved a template, you will see a new button when you edit this template. **Save As** allows you duplicate the template, so that you can make changes and save the template as a new template without affecting the original template. This can save you time by not having to enter all the template information for a new template. If you already have an existing template that is similar to the new template, simply edit the fields that you need, and Save As a new template.

Newsletter Queue

Once you've created a template, you can send your newsletter by queuing the template. Navigate to Newsletter > Newsletter Templates. You will automatically be redirected here when you save a template.

- Find the template you want to use in the newsletter and select **Queue Newsletter** from the **Action** column.
- **Queue Date Start** - This allows you to line up multiple newsletters to be sent automatically at select times. If you want to send it immediately, leave this blank.
- **Subscribers From** - Select the subscribers from which Store View you wish to send the newsletter. You can select multiple Store Views. You can see the Store View from which each subscriber subscribed by navigating to Newsletter > Newsletter Subscribers.
- **Subject** - This will automatically populate from the template you selected, however it can be changed.
- **Sender Name** - This will automatically populate from the template you selected, however it can be changed.
- **Sender Email** - This will automatically populate from the template you selected, however it can be changed.
- **Message** - This will automatically populate from the template you selected, however it can be changed.
- Click **Save Newsletter**. You will automatically be taken to Newsletter > Newsletter Queue. This lists all currently queued newsletters. From this page, you will be able to see the which newsletters have an have not been sent. Magento will batch a newsletter if there are a large amount of recipients. For example, if you have 1000 recipients, Magento may send 100 emails every 15 minutes. Because of this, you can see which emails are in progress, how many recipients have currently received the newsletter, and the time than the newsletter finished sending.

Newsletter Subscribers

To view a list of all current and former subscribers to your newsletter, navigate to Newsletter > Newsletter Subscriber. You can view all of their information, as well as the Store View from which they subscribed to the newsletter. As mentioned in the previous section, you can send different newsletters to subscribers from different Store Views. In the **Type** column, a subscriber can be either a Customer or a Guest. Customers have several options to sign up for the newsletter. There is a checkbox present when creating an account, as well as a checkbox in their My Account page. All visitors have the option to sign up by entering their email address in the

Newsletter block located in the left column. Logged in customers can enter alternate email addresses (other than the one associated to their account) in order to have newsletters sent there. If they are not logged in at the time, they will be subscribed as a Guest.

From this list you have the option to make batch updates to subscribers, to unsubscribe one or more subscribers at one time. To make Batch Updates to subscribers, select the subscribers to which you would like to unsubscribe. At the top of the subscribers list, you have the option to **Select All** subscribers or **Select Visible** subscribers (subscribers currently displaying on the page). Or, you can simply check the checkboxes of each subscribers to which you wish to unsubscribe individually. You can see the number of **items selected** at the top of the customers list, and it will update each time a checkbox is checked or unchecked. When you have all the desired subscribers selected, choose **Unsubscribe** from the **Actions** drop-down menu, also at the top of the customers list. This will unsubscribe the selected subscribers from your newsletter when you press **Submit**.

Newsletter Problem Reports

You can view any problems that the system had sending the newsletter by navigating to Newsletter > Newsletter Problem Reports. For example, a newsletter sent to an erroneous e-mail address will appear here.

Static Blocks

By using **Static Blocks** you are able to create content for category pages, allowing you to showcase items and promotions instead of just displaying a grid list of products. To create a static block, navigate to CMS > Static Blocks and select **Add New Block**

New Block

General Information

Block Title *	<input type="text"/>
Identifier *	<input type="text"/>
Store View *	<input type="button" value="All Store Views"/> Main Website <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Shoes Store Shoe V2 Shoe V1 Floral Store <ul style="list-style-type: none"> English Spanish to delete Jeff <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Jeff's Watch English
Status *	<input type="button" value="Disabled"/>
Content *	<input type="text"/>

1. Enter the **Block Title**.
2. The **Block Identifier** must not contain any spaces. When you want to place a block on a landing page or in a newsletter (see Landing Pages and Creating and Sending Newsletters), you can use this identifier and this piece of code:

```
{block type="cms/block" block_id="block-id"}
```

3. Select the **Store View** to which this block will apply. You can also apply it to **All Store Views**.
4. With the **Status** you can choose whether the block is **Enabled** or **Disabled**.
5. Enter your **Content** in an HTML Format.
6. When you are finished, click **Save Block**.

General Information

Block Title *	<input type="text" value="Cellphones Landing"/>
Identifier *	<input type="text" value="cellphones-landing"/>
Store View *	<input type="button" value="All Store Views"/> Main Website <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Shoes Store Shoe V2 Shoe V1 Floral Store <ul style="list-style-type: none"> English Spanish to delete Jeff <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Jeff's Watch English
Status *	<input type="button" value="Enabled"/>
Content *	<pre></pre>

You can place this block on a category page by selecting it from the **CMS Block** drop-down in Catalog > Manage Categories.

Cell Phones



Sony Ericsson W810i
On sale now through September 21st
[Buy Now](#)

5 Item(s) Show 9 per page

View as: [Grid](#) [List](#) Sort by [Best Value](#) ↑

		
Samsung MM-A900M Ace  (1)	Nokia 2610 Phone  (1)	BlackBerry 8100 Pearl  (1)

The static blocks are incredibly flexible, allowing you to create something as simple as a text category description, or something as intricate as multiple image maps, such as what we are showcasing on the Electronics category page. You can also add blocks to a Landing Page by using the code:

```
{ {block type="cms/block" block_id="block-id"} }
```

You can read more about Landing Pages [later in the chapter](#).

Magento
Demo Store

Welcome to the Magento Demo Store! [My Account](#) | [Log In](#)
[My Cart](#) | [My Wishlist](#) | [Checkout](#)

Apparel Furniture Electronics

[Home](#) > [Electronics](#)

Electronics

Cell Phones

Don't ever lose touch with your loved ones.



Use our phones. Love it, cherish it, keep it by your bed side, cause you need it.

OUR BEST SELLING BRANDS:

Samsung	Sony
Nokia	AT&T

BLACKBERRY E100 PEARL NOW \$349.99



Digital Cameras

Memories fade, but photos are forever.



Capture your memories with our quality digital cameras:

OUR BEST SELLING BRANDS:

Olympus	Kodak
Argus	Canon




Laptops

Isn't it time you got quality for your buck?



With Magento, you can.

OUR BEST SELLING BRANDS:

Acer	Sony
Apple	Toshiba

Don't forget our FREE SHIPPING on orders over \$50

BACK TO SCHOOL

Get your Acer Ferrari 3200 Now!



Toshiba M285-E 14"



Landing Pages

Landing Pages in Magento can be used for any static page, from a Homepage to a Frequently Asked Questions page. To create and edit landing pages, navigate to CMS > Manage Pages. To create a new page, click the **Add New Page** button. You will see three tabs for the new page: **General Information**, **Customer Design**, and **Meta Data**.

General Information

General Information

Page Title *	Home Page
SEF URL Identifier *	home (eg: domain.com/identifier)
Store View *	All Store Views Main Website Shoes Store Shoe V2 Shoe V1 Floral Store English Spanish to delete Jeff Jeff's Watch
Status *	Enabled
Content *	<h1>This is the Home Page</h1>

1. Enter the **Page Title** for this page. The Page Title is used for the Meta Page title for the new landing page.
2. The **SEF** (Search Engine Friendly) **URL Identifier** allows you to create a more descriptive URL for each page, so that search engines can find them more easily. In the example above, entering *home* for the homepage would create a URL for this page in the format *domain.com/home*. For more information about URL rewrites, refer back to [Chapter 3: Set up your Catalog](#).
3. Select the **Store View** in which you want to present this Landing Page. You can also present it in **All Store Views**.
4. The default **Status** for a new page is **Disabled**, meaning the page will not show on the Front-end. Switch the status to **Enabled** to have the page appear.
5. Create the content of the Landing Page in the **Content** field. It must be in HTML format, allowing the most flexibility. You can use HTML to upload images, videos, text, Static Blocks, etc. To add Blocks use the code:

```
{block type="cms/block" block_id="block-id"}
```

Custom Design

Configure the theme and layout of your Landing page in the Custom Design tab. This is very similar to the design options available for category and product pages.

1. Select the design you want from the **Custom Theme** drop-down. Magento comes with several different design options out of the box. If you leave this drop-down blank, it will automatically use the Current package name design. This can be edited by navigating to System > Configuration and clicking the Design tab. Enter the name of the design you want in the **Current package name** field, and this design will apply to all Landing Pages for which you do not specify a different design.
2. With the **Customer Theme From** and **Custom Theme To** fields, you can select a time frame in which the category will automatically switch to a design, and then switch back to the blank option when the time frame ends. This is perfect for the holidays, so that you can create a holiday design for you pages, and then have your site automatically switch back to the normal design whenever you want, without having to remember to do it yourself.
3. The **Layout** drop-down determines the structural aspects of the page. The default is **Empty**, which will only show the information you enter in the Content field. If you want to keep your headers and footers on this page you will need to code them into the content area. All options other than Empty include both the header and footer, so they will not need to be codes into the content area. **1 column** displays only the Contents, header, and footer. **2 Columns with left bar** adds the left column to the **1 column** display, which by default includes the currency selection and layered navigation. **2 Columns with right bar** adds the right column to the 1 column display, which by default includes the shopping cart view, wishlist, compared products list, polls, and newsletter sign-up. **3 columns** displays both the left and the right column.
4. The **Layout Update XML** is essentially a static block, with a few differences.
 - Rather than HTML, the structure must be in XML format.
 - The Update will display at the bottom of the page, below the content, whereas a static block will display anywhere within the content that you specify.
 - The Update will display on the page only during the dates specified in the Customer Theme From/To date range.

Meta Data

You already designated the Meta Page Title in the General Information tab, but you can add Meta **Keywords** and **Meta Description** in this tab. When you are finished, click **Save Page**. You can edit the page again by clicking on it, or view the page with all HTML and XML formatted by clicking the **Preview** button in the **Action** column.

This is a demo store. Any orders placed through this store will not be honored or fulfilled.

MAGENTO
Demo Store

Search entire store here...

Default welcome msg! [My Account](#)

[My Cart](#) | [My Wishlist](#) | [Checkout](#)

Computers Cups [View category](#)

Now Available
Buy Canon *Rebel*
Starting at **\$499**


It's here - Magento end of summer SALE!!
Starts September 1st



ELECTRONICS **20% OFF** **MEN'S SHOES** **15% OFF** **APPLIANCES** **10% OFF**

POPULAR TAGS [View All](#)
[cup white](#)

MY CART - 0 items
You have no items in your cart.
[Go to Cart](#)

COMPARE PRODUCTS
- 0 items
You have no items to compare.

COMMUNITY POLL
What is the best e-commerce solution?
 Magento
 OsCommerce
 ZenCart
 PhpShop
[Vote](#)

NEWSLETTER
Sign up for our newsletter:

[Subscribe](#)

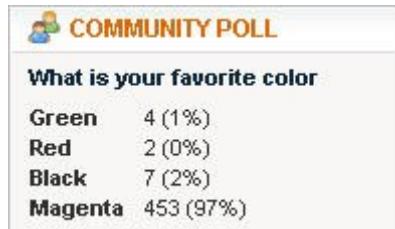
Once you have created a few Landing Pages, designate which one will be used as your home page, and which one will be used for HTTP 404 errors. Navigate to System > Configuration, and select Web from the left column. In the **Default web url** field, enter the relative path of the home page, and select which Landing Page to use as the home page from the **CMS Home Page** drop-down. In the **Default no-route url** field, enter the relative path of the no-route page. This is the page that visitors will encounter when they attempt to view a page in your site that does not exist. Select which Landing Page to use as the no route page from the CMS No Route Page drop-down. You can also determine whether or not Landing Pages will have the breadcrumb feature enabled from the **Show breadcrumbs for CMS pages** drop-down.

Polls

Polls are a powerful marketing tool, and Magento makes it easy to find out your customer's opinions on just about everything.



Polls are beneficial because they occupy a small amount of space on your pages and are likely to be answered by many people. Poll results are immediately displayed after an answer is submitted, as shown below:



The first step is to ensure that your configuration settings are correct. Navigate to System > Configuration, select the Advanced tab, and set **Mage_Poll** to **Enable**. This should be Enabled by default, but if it has been Disabled, you must Enable it before being able to create polls. If you want to Disable Polls, select **Disable**. When you are finished, click **Save Config**.

To create a Poll, navigate to CMS > Poll Manager.

Poll Information

1. Click on **Add New Poll** in the top right of the page.
2. The **Poll Question** will be the question displayed at the top of the poll in the front-end, i.e. *What is the best open source e-commerce solution?*
3. The **Status** by default will be **Open**. This is similar to Enabled. To remove the Poll from your store, select **Closed**.
4. Select which store views in which you want the poll to appear from the **Visible In** multiple select menu.

Poll Answers

1. Click on **Add New Answer** to add potential answers. Each answer will list on the front-end, with a radio button by which the customer can select that answer.
2. Enter an **Answer Title**, i.e. *Magento*.
3. If you want to “influence” the poll and skew the results, you can add or remove votes from the **Votes Count**. This will automatically increase each time a customer votes for this answer in the Poll.
4. Click Add New Answer for each answer you want to display in the poll, and repeat the steps above.

Edit Poll 'What is your favorite color'

Assigned Answers

Answer Title:	Votes Count:	Action
Green	4	<input checked="" type="button"/> Delete
Red	2	<input checked="" type="button"/> Delete
Black	7	<input checked="" type="button"/> Delete
Magenta	453	<input checked="" type="button"/> Delete

Add New Answer

Customers can only answer a poll once. Once they submit an answer, they will only be able to view the results.

You can view the results in the admin in this tab. If you have multiple polls, they will rotate randomly in the front-end each time the page is reloaded.

Search Synonyms and Re-directs



In Magento, the Store Owner has complete control over the catalog's **Search**. This includes the ability to designate which aspects of which products the search can access, as well as capability to instruct the search to display different results or even a different website. There are two search options available to your customers: Quick Search and Advanced Search.

Quick Search

Quick search is available to your customers via the search bar at the top of the header in the front-end.

What the In-Store Search looks for

When conducting a search, results will populate based on matches in any of a searchable product's searchable attributes (yes, there are separate search settings for both products and attributes). Because all characteristics of a product are considered attributes – such as the name, description, and color – you can search for anything related to any product. Simply make sure that the product is searchable by:

1. In the Admin, navigate to Catalog > Manage Products.
2. Click the **Edit** link under the desired product.
3. Locate the **Visibility** dropdown and select either **Search** or **Catalog, Search**.
4. Click **Save**.

And make sure that the attribute is searchable by:

1. In the Admin, navigate to Catalog > Attributes > Manage Attributes.
2. Click on the desired attribute.
3. Click **Properties** in the left column.
4. In the **Use in quick search** drop-down, select **Yes**.
5. Click **Save Attribute**.

When the customer types a set of characters into the search field, the query will locate any occurrence of those characters in the order which they were typed, anywhere within an attribute. For example, if your customer created a search for *tie rack*, and you had a product description containing the words *necktie racks*, your customer's search would yield this product as a result, because their search term is contained in order within the

attribute: **necktie racks**. An additional feature of Magento Search is that as soon as your customer has typed two characters into the search field, a dropdown window will appear listing up to ten suggested search terms that begin with the same characters, along with the amount of results for each term. You will find more about how to customize this feature below.

Saving a Search Term

All saved search terms can be accessed in the Admin by navigating to Catalog > Search. There are two ways for a search term to be saved to this page. All search terms used by a customer in the store will automatically save here. Additionally, you can manually enter a search term that you believe will be useful to your customers.

From the Store

When a customer types any set of characters into the Search Bar at the top of the page and clicks **Search**, those characters will save as a new search term, provided this set of characters has not already been searched for. The term will save whether or not the search returns any results in the store.

From the Admin:

1. Click **Add New Search**.
2. In the **Search Query** field, enter the search term as you anticipate the customer will type it.
3. If you anticipate that a customer may incorrectly type a term in the search bar, but you still want this search to point to the correct results, you can enter the correct term in the **Synonym For** field. For example, when searching for *electronics*, if your customer accidentally types *electroincs*, the query will produce no results. If you designate that *electroincs* is a synonym for *electronics*, your customer will see the correct results.
4. If you prefer that a customer's search does not produce a results page, but rather leads somewhere else, such as an existing catalog page, you can enter the desired web address in the **Redirect URL** field. This web address can be within the same store, or a completely different website altogether. For example, if you have two stores, one that sells digital wristwatches and one that sells analog wristwatches, you can designate that a search for *digital* in your analog wristwatch store redirects to the digital wristwatch store. This way, your customers won't wind up with an empty results page.

Editing Search Terms

Once a search term has been saved, you have the ability to edit two new fields. Simply click on the desired search term in the list and you have access to:

- The **Number of Results** field displays how many results were displayed to the customer during the most recent search using the selected search term. This can be changed manually, but it will reset to the real number of results the next time this search term is used in the store. This is more useful when creating a new

search term, or adding a synonym for an existing search term. For example, you noticed that several customers have searched for the plural *shirts*, but this has not produced the maximum results, since several of your products only contain the singular *shirt*. You know that *shirt* returns 32 results (including the singular and plural occurrences), so after you have added this to the Synonym For field, you add 32 to the Number of Results field. This way, the next time a customer types *shirt* into the search field, they will see an option for *shirt* and for *shirts*, both with 32 results.

Note: If the Number of Results for a search term is blank, the term will not display in the suggested search terms dropdown window.

- The **Number of Uses** field displays how many times a customer searched for this term. As mentioned above, the suggested search terms dropdown window displays up to ten terms. The top ten terms are determined by the highest Number of Uses, and they will sort from top to bottom based on this as well. Therefore, you can ensure that a certain suggested term will always display at the top of list by entering a high Number of Uses into this field.
- When you're done, click **Save Search**, and you have successfully customized your search options.

Advanced Search

Search Settings	
Name	<input type="text"/>
Description	<input type="text"/>
SKU	<input type="text"/>
Price	<input type="text"/> - <input type="text"/>
Manufacturer	<input type="text"/> Nine West Kodak Argus Olympus
Shoe Type	<input type="text"/> Golf Shoes Biking Running High Heels
Color	<input type="text"/> Green White Brown Magneta
Tax Class	<input type="text"/> default Taxable Goods Shipping tax_killer
shape	<input type="text"/>
In Depth	<input type="text"/>
Dimensions	<input type="text"/>
Model	<input type="text"/>
Processor	<input type="text"/>
Memory	<input type="text"/>
Harddrive	<input type="text"/>
Screensize	<input type="text"/>
Gender	<input type="text"/> Womens Mens Boys Girls
Shoe Size	<input type="text"/> 3 4 5

In the footer of the front-end is a link to the **Advanced Search** page. As you will notice immediately, the Advanced Search contains separate fields for each attribute. For an attribute to appear in this page, you must navigate to Catalog > Attributes > Manage Attributes, locate the attribute, and select Yes from the **Use in advanced search** drop-down. The field of each attribute will vary depending on the **Catalog Input Type for Store Owner** in the attribute's properties. Some attributes may have text fields, others may have drop-down menus, while still others may have multiple select menus, and so on. Therefore, unlike the Quick Search, the Advanced Search will only search the attributes for which search criteria has been entered by the customer (if your customer enters search criteria in the *color* field, but not in the *size* field, the Advanced Search will only search within the color attribute). Within a given attribute, the query will locate occurrences of the characters similar to the manner in which the Quick Search works, however this is only for text fields. Drop-downs, multiple select menus, and other Input Types will search for an exact match, since the available search options are

already presented to the customer. As a result of the multiple search fields, there are no Search Terms which save to admin.

Chapter 6: Customers

Default Customer Options

Before creating customer accounts, or allowing your customers to create their own accounts, it is important for you to configure your customer settings. To do so, navigate to System > Configuration and select the Customer Configuration tab in the left column.

Account Sharing Options

- **Share Customer Accounts** - When a customer creates an account in a given Store View, that account will be shared with every Store View in the same Website if you select **Per Website**. If you select **Global**, that account will be shared with every store view in every Website that you have created.

Create New Account Options

- **Email Template** - Select the template for the email that will be sent to a customer when they create a new account. There is more information on how to configure these templates [later in the chapter](#).
- **Email Sender** - Designate the address from which New Account emails will be sent to your customers. There is more information on how to configure these addresses [later in the chapter](#).
- **Default Email Domain** - This field is primarily used during admin Order creation. In this process, the email field is optional. If it is left blank, Magento will automatically generate an email address to associate to the Order. The format will be [Customer ID]@[Default Email Domain]. During this process there is a checkbox allowing you send an **Email Order Confirmation**. If you left the email field blank, you would not want to send an Order email. The automatically generated email is fictitious, so it would bounce back.
- **Default Group** - Designate the Customer Group that will be assigned to all customers when they first create an account. This drop-down will list all existing Customer Groups other than NOT LOGGED IN. There is more information about Customer Groups [later in the chapter](#).
- **Need to Confirm** - Select whether or not you customers will need to send an email confirmation reply in order to activate their account.

Password Options

- **Forgot Email Template** - Select the template for the email that will be sent to a customer when they click the **Forgot Your Password?** link during log in.

- **Forgot Email Sender** - Designate the address from which the Forgot Password emails will be sent to you customers.

Contact Options and Emails

Throughout Magento there are options to send your customers email notifications for various purposes, from newsletter subscription, to invoice creation. Each option requires you to select the template of the email, and the address from which the email will be sent. Each of these two aspects is configured in a different location. In addition to being able to contact your customers for various purposes, you also have the ability to allow your customers to contact you via the Contact Us feature.

Editing Email Templates

To create new email templates, navigate to System > Transactional Emails, and click Add New Template in the top right of the page.

- **Template** - From this drop-down, you can select one of the many pre-existing email templates that are included with Magento by default. These have been created for a number of purposes, including currency rate update warnings, Order updates from the admin, and product stock alerts.
- **Locale** - If you have Locales other than English (United States) installed, you can select one of those Locales from this drop-down prior to loading the pre-existing templates. This will load the selected template in the corresponding language of that Locale. Click **Load Template** and the template data will load into the Template Subject and Template Content fields, where you can customize them for your store.

Load default template

Template *	New account
Locale *	English (United States)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Load Template 	

Template Information

Template Name *	<input type="text"/>
Template Subject *	<input type="text" value="Welcome, {{var customer.name}}!"/>
Template Content *	<pre><style type="text/css"> body,td { color:#2f2f2f; font:11px/1.35em Verdana, Arial, Helvetica, sans-serif; </style> <div style="font:11px/1.35em Verdana, Arial, Helvetica, sans-serif;"> <table cellspacing="0" cellpadding="0" border="0" width="98%" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td align="center" valign="top"></pre>

- **Template Name** - This is the name of the template as it will appear in the drop-down menus throughout the admin, where you can select to use this template for various purposes.
- **Template Subject** - This is the subject of the email that will be sent when you designate to use this template. This can be loaded from a pre-existing template above, or you can create your own.
- **Template Content** - This is the body of the email that will be sent when you designate to use this template. This can be loaded from a pre-existing template above, or you can create your own. All stylization must be in HTML format.

At the top of the page there are buttons which offer several more features. If you have loaded a pre-existing template, or if you have created your own using HTML tags, you can click **Convert to Plain Text**. This will remove all HTML tags in the Template Content field and display only the text. You can then return the tags by clicking **Return HTML Version**. If you leave the tags, you can click **Preview Template**, which will load the Template Content into the browser window so that you can see the formatted content as it will display to your customers in the email. When you are finished with your edits, click **Save Template**, and you will be able to select this template to send to your customers for various purposes. It will also add to the template list, where you can Preview each template by clicking **Preview** in the **Action** column, or edit the template by clicking on it.

Email Sender

To configure the addresses from which your customer emails will be sent, navigate to System > Configuration, and select the Store Email Addresses. There are five different sender to which you can associate an email address: General contact, Sales representative, Customer support, Customer email 1, and Customer email 2. For

each of these senders, you must designate the **Sender name**, which is the name that will appear in the drop-down menus throughout the admin (where you can select to use these Senders for various purposes), and the name that will appear next to the Sender Email in the emails sent to your customers. You must also designate the **Sender email**, which is the address from which the emails (that you associate to this Sender) will be sent.

Contact Us

If you wish to allow your customers to be able to send comments to you via email, Magento offers a Contact Us feature. In order to enable this, navigate to System > Configuration, click the Contacts tab from the left column, and select Yes from the **Enable Contact Us** drop-down. This will create a Contact Us link in the footer of your site on the front-end. When your customers click this link, they will be directed to the Contact Us page, which enables them to enter their name, email address, telephone number, and a comment. When they click Submit, this information will be sent via email to the address entered in the **Send Emails To** drop-down in the same configuration page as above. The **Email Sender** drop-down determines the address from which the email will be sent to the specified address. The **Email Template** drop-down determines the template that the email will use.

Creating Customers

Customer accounts can be created multiple ways. Perhaps the most typical method to create an account is for your customers to do so themselves in the front-end. However, Magento allows you to create new customer accounts in the admin.

In Front-end

There are two sections in the front-end where your customers may choose to register and create a new customer account: Log In and Checkout. The process for both of these is very similar.

Log In

In the top right of your store is a **Log In** link. When a customer clicks here, they will have the option to log in using their pre-existing account, or, if they don't already have an account, they can create one by clicking **Create an Account**. This will redirect them to the Create an Account page, which will require them to enter their **First Name**, **Last Name**, **Email Address**, and **Password** (they will have to confirm the password as well). They will also have the option to sign up for the newsletter by checking the checkbox. When they click Submit, the customer account will be created in Magento, and the customer will be redirected to the My Account page. There is more information [later in the chapter](#) about the features offered to your customers in this page.

Create an Account

Personal Information

First Name *

Last Name *

Email Address *

Sign Up for Newsletter

Login Information

Password *

Confirm Password *

Checkout

If a customer is not logged in when they click the **Proceed to Checkout** button, they will have the option to log in using their pre-existing account, or, if they don't already have an account, **Checkout as Guest** (if you have enabled this) or create a new account by selecting **Register**. If they select Register, and click **Continue**, they will be redirected to the standard one-page checkout page. This is the same process that previously registered customers go through when checking out, except that the First Name, Last Name, Email Address, and Password fields will be blank. When all of the information is entered and the Order is submitted, a new account will be created using the information used in the checkout, including the address information, which will automatically be saved to the account.

1 Checkout method

<p>CHECKOUT AS A GUEST OR REGISTER</p> <p>Register with us for future convenience:</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Checkout as Guest</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Register</p> <p>Register and save time!</p> <p>Register with us for future convenience:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fast and easy check out • Easy access to your order history and status 	<p>LOGIN</p> <p>Already registered?</p> <p>Please log in below:</p> <p>Email Address <small>*</small></p> <input type="text"/> <p>Password <small>*</small></p> <input type="password"/>
---	--

* Required Fields

Continue [Forgot your password?](#) **Login**

In Admin

To create a new customer account in the admin, navigate the Customers > Manage Customers and click **Add New Customer** in the top right of the page. This is the same process that your customers will go through on the front-end, with some small differences.

Account Information

- **Create In** - This is the Website in which this account will be created. You can also choose to create it in the **Admin**. If you have configured customer accounts to share Per Website, this will affect in which Websites your customers will have accounts. If customer accounts are shared Globally, this has little effect.
- **Customer Group** - You have the option to select the Customer Group to which this customer will be assigned. Customers who create an account on the front-end will automatically be assigned to the Customer Group designated in System > Configuration, as described above. There is more information about Customer Groups below.
- **Send welcome email** - By checking this checkbox you can choose to send a new account email to the customer. This is the email you designated in System > Configuration, as described above. Customers who create an account on the front-end will automatically receive this email.
- **Password** - You will not be required to confirm the password, because the characters are not hidden in this field. Instead of entering a password manually, you can check the checkbox to auto-generate a password for the customer. Either way, the password will be included in the email sent to the customer.

Addresses

In the Addresses tab, you will have the option to enter one or more addresses for this account while creating it. For each address you wish to create, click Add New Address. As you enter the information in the fields on the

right, the address manager panel on the left will update. The address manager panel will have a separate entry for each address, and you can designate which address is the **Default Billing Address** and which is the **Default Shipping Address** by selecting the radio button. The default addresses will automatically be selected from the address drop-down each time an order is placed with this account in the admin or front-end. When an address is selected as either of the defaults, the red X button will disappear, because it will not be able to be deleted.

The screenshot shows the Magento Admin interface for managing customer addresses. On the left, under 'Customer Addresses', there are two entries:

- Magento Commerce**:
Varien
11832 W. Pico Blvd.
Los Angeles, California, 90064
United States
T: 310-954-8012
 Default Billing Address
 Default Shipping Address
- Santos L. Halper**:
742 Evergreen Terrace
Springfield, -- Please select--, ?
United States
T: 555-3223
 Default Billing Address
 Default Shipping Address

On the right, the 'Edit Customer's Address' dialog box is open for the first address. It contains the following fields:

City *	Los Angeles
Company	Varien
Country *	United States
Fax	
First Name *	Magento
Last Name *	Commerce
Zip/Postal Code *	90064
State/Province *	California
Street Address *	11832 W. Pico Blvd.
Telephone *	310-954-8012

When you are finished, click **Save Customer**. Once a customer has been created, you will have access to several additional tabs in the left column. There is more information [later in the chapter](#) about the features offered in these tabs.

Customer Groups

For each customer who has an account in your store, you have the option to configure a Customer Group. Customer Groups are a means to apply other features in Magento to groups of customers all at once. This is useful in many areas, from allowing certain customers to use Catalog and Shopping Cart Price Rules, to assigning Customer Tax Classes.

Creating Customer Groups

To create Customer Groups, navigate to Customers > Customer Groups, and click Add New Customer Group in the top right of the page.

- **Group Name** - Enter the name of the Customer Group as it will appear throughout the admin.

- **Tax class** - Each Customer Group will have one Customer Tax Class assigned to it. Select that tax class from this drop-down, which will list all existing tax classes you've created in Sales > Tax > Customer Tax Classes. Tax classes are not assigned directly to customers, but rather to Customer Groups, which are then assigned directly to customers. For more information about Taxes, refer back to [Chapter 4: Get Ready for Selling](#).

By default, Magento comes with two Customer Groups: **NOT LOGGED IN** and **General**. NOT LOGGED IN is the default Customer Group for all customers who have not created an account, such as those who have used Guest Checkout or Google Checkout (if you have enabled those features), which do not require creating an account in Magento. General is the default Customer Group for newly registered customers, although this can be changed in System > Configuration, as described [earlier in the chapter](#). Neither of these Customer Groups can be deleted, and the Group Name for NOT LOGGED IN cannot be edited. When you are finished, click **Save Customer Group**, and you can now assign this group to your customers.

Managing Customer Groups

Assigning Customers to Customer Groups

Now that you have set up all of your Customer Groups, you can assign them to customers by navigating to Customer > Manage Customers. When customers first create an account, they will be assigned to the Customer Group you designated in System > Configuration as described [earlier in the chapter](#). To re-assign the customer to a new Customer Group, locate the customer and click the **Edit** button in the **Action** column. Click the Account Information tab in the left column. You can select a new **Customer Group** in the Customer Group drop-down, which lists all existing Customer Groups other than NOT LOGGED IN. There are also a few other places where you can change a customer's Customer Group, such as when creating a new order in the admin, or creating a reorder in the admin. To re-assign the Customer Group for several customers at once, refer to Batch Updates below.

Using Customer Groups as filters

There are several places in Magento where you can filter features to only apply to certain Customer Groups. You can filter Catalog Price Rules by navigating to Promotions > Catalog Price Rules, and you can filter Shopping Cart Price Rules by navigating to Promotions > Shopping Cart Price Rules. There is more information about both of these feature in [Chapter 5: Promotions, Marketing, and Content Pages](#). You can filter Tier Pricing by navigating to Catalog > Manage Products, selecting a product and clicking the Prices tab. More information about this feature can also be found in [Chapter 5](#).

Batch Updates to Customers

Similar to Batch Updates for products, this feature saves you time by allowing you to change certain settings for multiple customers at the same time. To make Batch Updates to customers, navigate to Customers > Manage Customers. Select the customers to which you would like to make updates. At the top of the customers list, you have the option to **Select All** customers or **Select Visible** customers (customers currently displaying on the page). Or, you can simply check the checkboxes of each customer to which you wish to make updates individually. You can see the number of **items selected** at the top of the customers list, and it will update each time a checkbox is checked or unchecked. When you have all the desired customers selected, chose your preferred Action from the drop-down menu, also at the top of the customers list.

ID	Name	Email	Group	Telephone	ZIP	Country	State/Province	Customer Size	Action
16	Professor Peter Van Nostrand	peter@example.com	General	555-FILK	00000	United States	New York	Apr 17, 2008	Main Website
15	H.E. Pennypacker	h.e@example.com	General	555-4567	00000	United States	New York	Apr 17, 2008	Admin
14	Kel Varsen	kel@example.com	General	555-3456	00000	United States	New York	Apr 17, 2008	Main Website
13	Cherith Cutestory	cherith@example.com	General	555-2345	99999	United States	California	Apr 17, 2008	Main Website
12	Bob Loblaw	bob@example.com	General	555-1234	99999	United States	California	Apr 17, 2008	Main Website
11	Santos L. Halper	santos@example.com	General	555-3223	?	United States		Apr 16, 2008	Main Website

- Delete** - This will delete the selected customers from your catalog when you press **Submit**.
- Subscribe to/Unsubscribe from newsletter** - This will subscribe/unsubscribe the selected customers to/from the newsletter when you press Submit.
- Assign a customer group** - Selecting this will produce a **Group** drop-down menu to the right, which lists all existing Customer Groups other than NOT LOGGED IN. Select a Customer Group, and this will be assigned to the selected customers when you press Submit.

Front-End and Back-End functionality for Customer Accounts

Front-End

Once a customer has created an account, and logs in they will have access to features on the front-end that they otherwise would not have. This includes the My Account page, My Wishlist, and Checkout with Multiple Addresses.

My Account

When a customer clicks on the **My Account** link, they will be taken to the Account Dashboard. This is a summary of the most important account information, including Recent Orders, the general Contact Information, Newsletter status, default addresses, and Recent Reviews. If they click Edit for any of these options, they will be redirected to the corresponding tab of the more detailed My Account page. This offers more even more account information.

My Dashboard

Hello, Santos L. Helper!

From your My Account Dashboard you have the ability to view a snapshot of your recent account activity and update your account information. Select a link below to view or edit information.

RECENT ORDERS

Order #	Date	Ship to	Order Total	Status	
100000077	4/16/08	Santos L. Helper	\$ 89.00	Pending	View Order Reorder

ACCOUNT INFORMATION

Contact Information	Edit	Newsletters	Edit
Santos L. Helper santos@varien.com Change Password		You are currently not subscribed to any newsletter.	

Address Book

PRIMARY BILLING ADDRESS	PRIMARY SHIPPING ADDRESS	Manage Addresses
Santos L. Helper 742 Evergreen Terrace Springfield, United States T: 555-3223 Edit Address	Santos L. Helper 742 Evergreen Terrace Springfield, United States T: 555-3223 Edit Address	

MY RECENT REVIEWS

View All Reviews
1 Dog House
Rating: ★★★★★

Account Dashboard

Takes the customer back to the summary page.

Address Book

Lists the Default Billing Address, Default Shipping Address (these are listed separately even if they are the same address, unlike in the admin), and all additional addresses with the option to edit each individually.

Account Information

Here the customer can edit the general contact information, including the account password.

My Orders

Lists all Orders placed by the customer, with more detailed information available when **View Order** is clicked.

Here, the order status of each Order can be tracked by the customer via RSS feeds (refer back to [Chapter 5](#) for more details). Additionally, if an Invoice, Shipment, or Credit Memo has been created for an Order, an **About this Order** bar will appear above the Order information, containing an **Invoices**, **Shipments**, or **Refunds** link, respectively (or a combination of multiple links). Each link will contain more detailed information about all related Invoices, Shipments, or Credit Memos, with the ability for your customer to print a copy of each individually, or copies of all Invoices, Shipments, or Credit Memos simultaneously. Shipments have an additional feature. If a Shipment has one or more associated tracking numbers, your customer will have the ability to **Track this shipment** or **Track all shipments**, which will open a pop-up window containing the shipment status, which Magento receives directly from the shipment gateway. There is more information about Invoices, Shipments, and Credit Memos in [Chapter 8: Managing Orders](#).

My Product Reviews

Lists all product reviews placed by the customer, with and a link to the product, and more detailed information when View Details is clicked.

Newsletter Subscription

Lists all newsletters, with a checkbox next to the ones to which the customer is subscribed.

My Wishlist

List all products that the customer has added to the wishlist, with an option to add comments and add each item to the cart. When the customer is logged in, they can also see a quick view of their wishlist in the right column, below the shopping cart feature. Additionally, the number of items in the wishlist will display next to the **My Wishlist** button at the top of the page.

Checkout with Multiple Addresses

In order to be able to use this feature, the customer must have an account and be logged in. Checkout as Guest is not available for this checkout process, even if you have enabled it. Additionally, there is no option to Register

during checkout. If a customer does not already have an account, they will have the option to Create an Account, which must be completed as a separate process before they can proceed to the checkout page. For more information about Checkout with Multiple Address, refer back to [Chapter 4: Get Ready for Selling](#).

Back-End

Once a customer account is created, you will have access to more features in the admin than are available when creating an account in the admin. These features include those available to the customer in the My Account page on the front-end, along with several additional features.

Customer View

This is a summary of the customer's information, including the most recent time and date the customer logged in, whether the customer is online currently, the time and date the account was created, the store in which the account was created, the Customer Group, Primary Billing Address, a summary of lifetime purchase information grouped by store, a list of all Recent Orders, and the items currently in the Shopping Cart and Wishlist.

The screenshot shows the 'Customer View' page in the Magento Admin. At the top, there is a header with the customer's name, Santos L. Halper, and several buttons: Back, Reset, Delete Customer, Create Order, and Save Customer. Below the header, there are four main sections:

- Personal Information:** Displays details like Last Logged In (Apr 16, 2008 9:22:11 PM (Online)), Account Created on (Apr 16, 2008 9:13:18 PM), Account Created in (Admin), Customer Group (General), and Primary Billing Address (Santos L. Halper, 742 Evergreen Terrace, Springfield, United States, T: 555-3223).
- Sales Statistics:** Shows lifetime sales and average sale across different store views. For Main Website, Store A changed, English, the lifetime sales are \$ 89.00 and the average sale is \$ 89.00. For All Store Views, the lifetime sales are \$ 89.00 and the average sale is \$ 89.00.
- Recent Orders:** Lists a single order (Order # 100000077) purchased at Apr 16, 2008 9:24:42 PM, shipped to Santos L. Halper, with a Grand Total of \$ 89.00. The order was bought from Main Website, Store A changed, English, and has a Reorder link.
- Shopping Cart - 0 item(s)** and **Wishlist - 1 item(s)**: Lists the Dog House product added from Main Website, Store A changed, with a Date Added of Apr 17, 2008 and 0 days in Wishlist.

Account Information

This includes the general contact information, and has the same functionality as when originally creating and account from the admin. It will also list the Website and Store View in which the account was created.

Addresses

This includes all the customer's addresses, and has the same functionality as when originally creating an account from the admin.

Orders

Lists all Orders created by the customer, or created for the customer from the admin. Clicking on an order will redirect to the Order page, which contains for detailed information and has additional features, such as creating Invoices and Shipments. For more information about these features, refer to [Chapter 8:Managing Orders](#).

Shopping Cart

Lists all products currently in the customer's Shopping Cart, with the option to Delete each product. Clicking on a product will redirect you to that product's page in the admin.

Wishlist

Lists all products currently in the customer's Wishlist, with the option to Delete each product. Clicking on a product will redirect you to that product's page in the admin.

Newsletter

Here you can subscribe or unsubscribe this customer from the newsletter, as well as view a list of all the newsletters of which this customer is a recipient. This looks very similar to the Newsletter Queue, and includes both Sent and Not Sent newsletters.

Product Reviews

Lists all Product Reviews submitted by the customer, and clicking on a Review will redirect you to that review's page in the admin.

Product Tags

Lists all Product Tags submitted by the customer, and clicking on a Tag will redirect you to that tag's page in the admin.

Online Customers

You can see a list of every customer that is currently logged in by navigating to Customers > Online Customers. This list even includes customers who are not logged in. They are referred to as **Visitors**, and the First Name for all Visitors will be **Guest**. For each customer, you will be able to see the IP address from which they are accessing your site, the time their session began, the time of the most recent activity in your site, and the most recent URL they visited. When you click on a logged in customer, you will be redirected to that customer's page in the admin.

ID	First Name	Last Name	Email	IP Address	Session Start Time	Last Activity	Type	Last URL	
				From:	<input type="text"/>	From:	<input type="text"/>	To:	<input type="text"/>
n/a	Guest	n/a	n/a	106.19.10.5	Apr 16, 2008 10:35:45 PM	Apr 16, 2008 10:36:50 PM	Visitor	https://var-dev.varien.com/magentor1.0.0-r18980/customer/account/login/	
n/a	Guest	n/a	n/a	5.100.6.0	Apr 16, 2008 10:35:44 PM	Apr 16, 2008 10:35:44 PM	Visitor	http://var-dev.varien.com/magentor1.0.0-r18980/	
n/a	Guest	n/a	n/a	66.197.135.164	Apr 16, 2008 10:35:42 PM	Apr 16, 2008 10:35:42 PM	Visitor	http://var-dev.varien.com/magentor1.0.0-r18980/wishlist/	
11	Santos L.	Halper	santos@varien.com	10.106.0.56	Apr 16, 2008 7:10:35 PM	Apr 16, 2008 10:35:07 PM	Customer	http://var-dev.varien.com/magentor1.0.0-r18980/wishlist/	

Chapter 7: Reports and Analytics

Reports

Magento includes several useful Reports to keep updated on anything from your customer's Shopping Cart to their Tags. All of the reports can be accessed by navigating to the Reports tab, and then locating the name of the desired report. Every report can be downloaded in CSV or Excel format. To do so, navigate to the appropriate report, select the desired format from the **Export to** drop-down, and click **Export**.

Sales

Sales Report

This report summarizes sales information for the designated scope and period of time. The scope can be defined in the **Show Report for** drop-down at the top of the page. There will be one line for each **Period**. A Period can be a Day, Month, or Year, and is defined in the **Show by** drop-down at the top of the page. The number of periods in the report depends on the date range designated at the top of the page. For each Period, you can see the total number of Orders placed, total number of items ordered, and the total monetary amount for the Subtotal, Tax, Shipping, Discount, Total, Invoices, and Credit Memos of each order. There will also be a row that totals the amounts of all Periods displayed in the report.

Sales Report										
Show Report for: All Websites										
From: 04/10/08		To: 04/17/08		Show by: Day		Refresh		Export to: CSV		
Period	Number of Orders	Items Ordered	Subtotal	Tax	Shipping	Discounts	Total	Invoiced	Refunded	
04/10/2008										No records found for this period.
04/11/2008	17	57	\$10,874.96	\$685.64	\$618.48	\$0.00	\$12,159.08	\$7,573.20	\$240.00	
04/12/2008										No records found for this period.
04/13/2008										No records found for this period.
04/14/2008	24	81	\$8,686.62	\$530.80	\$424.22	\$760.20	\$8,881.44	\$782.51	\$0.00	
04/15/2008										No records found for this period.
04/16/2008	39	160	\$10,393.55	\$618.07	\$585.66	\$711.00	\$10,688.28	\$0.00	\$0.00	
04/17/2008	4	5	\$268.97	\$0.00	\$282.81	\$0.00	\$551.78	\$0.00	\$0.00	
Total	84	283	\$30,224.10	\$1,814.51	\$1,911.17	\$1,471.20	\$32,476.58	\$8,365.71	\$240.00	

Tax Report

This report summarizes tax information for Orders placed within the designated scope and period of time. The scope can be defined in the **Show Report for** drop-down at the top of the page. There will be one line for each

Period. A Period can be a Day, Month, or Year, and is defined in the **Show by** drop-down at the top of the page. The number of periods in the report depends on the date range designated at the top of the page. Each Period will further be divided by the Tax Rates. For each Tax Rate, you can see the total number of Orders placed using that Tax Rate, and the total amount of tax charged using that Tax Rate. There will also be a row that totals the amounts of all Periods displayed in the report.

Shipping Report

This report summarizes shipping information for Orders placed within the designated scope and period of time. The scope can be defined in the **Show Report for** drop-down at the top of the page. There will be one line for each **Period**. A Period can be a Day, Month, or Year, and is defined in the **Show by** drop-down at the top of the page. The number of periods in the report depends on the date range designated at the top of the page. Each Period will further be divided by the Shipping Carrier/Method. For each Carrier/Method, you can see the total number of Orders placed using that Carrier/Method, and the total amount of shipping charged using that Carrier/Method. There will also be a row that totals the amounts of all Periods displayed in the report.

Total invoiced

This report summarizes Invoice information for the designated scope and period of time. The scope can be defined in the **Show Report for** drop-down at the top of the page. There will be one line for each **Period**. A Period can be a Day, Month, or Year, and is defined in the **Show by** drop-down at the top of the page. The number of periods in the report depends on the date range designated at the top of the page. For each Period, you can see the total number of Orders placed that have Invoices associated to them, and the total monetary amount invoiced, including how much of this amount was captured and how much was not. There will also be a row that totals the amounts of all Periods displayed in the report.

Total refunded

This report summarizes Credit Memo information for the designated scope and period of time. The scope can be defined in the **Show Report for** drop-down at the top of the page. There will be one line for each **Period**. A Period can be a Day, Month, or Year, and is defined in the **Show by** drop-down at the top of the page. The number of periods in the report depends on the date range designated at the top of the page. For each Period, you can see the total number of Orders placed that have Credit Memos associated to them, and the total monetary amount refunded, including how much of this amount was refunded online and how much was offline. There will also be a row that totals the amounts of all Periods displayed in the report.

Coupons Report

This report summarizes coupon information for Orders placed within the designated scope and period of time. The scope can be defined in the **Show Report for** drop-down at the top of the page. There will be one line for each **Period**. A Period can be a Day, Month, or Year, and is defined in the **Show by** drop-down at the top of the

page. The number of periods in the report depends on the date range designated at the top of the page. Each Period will further be divided by the Coupon Code. For each Coupon Code, you can see the total number of Orders placed using that Coupon Code, and the total monetary amounts for the Subtotal, Discount, and Total of Orders placed using that Coupon Code. There will also be a row that totals the amounts of all Periods displayed in the report.

Shopping Cart Report

Products in carts

This report lists all products in your store, including the price, the amount of Shopping Carts currently containing that product, and the amount of Orders placed containing that product.

Abandoned carts

This report lists all registered customers who added products to their Shopping Cart, and then logged out with the items still in the cart. For each customer, you can see the number of line items in the cart, total quantity, total monetary amount of the products, any coupon code the customer may have applied, and the timestamps for when the first item was added to the cart and the most recent cart activity.

Products

Bestsellers

This report summarizes product information for products ordered within the designated scope and period of time. The scope can be defined in the **Show Report for** drop-down at the top of the page. There will be one line for each **Period**. A Period can be a Day, Month, or Year, and is defined in the **Show by** drop-down at the top of the page. The number of periods in the report depends on the date range designated at the top of the page. Each Period will further be divided by the product name. For each product name, you can see the product price and total quantity of that product which has been ordered. There will also be a row that totals the amounts of all Periods displayed in the report.

Most Viewed

This report summarizes product information for products viewed within the designated scope and period of time. The scope can be defined in the **Show Report for** drop-down at the top of the page. There will be one line for each **Period**. A Period can be a Day, Month, or Year, and is defined in the **Show by** drop-down at the top of the page. The number of periods in the report depends on the date range designated at the top of the page. Each Period will further be divided by the product name. For each product name, you can see the product price and total number of times a customer has navigated to that product's page. There will also be a row that totals the amounts of all Periods displayed in the report.

Low stock

This report lists all products in your store, including the SKU and remaining quantity in stock. The products are listed from lowest quantity to highest quantity.

Customers

New Accounts

This report summarizes new customer accounts the designated scope and period of time. The scope can be defined in the **Show Report for** drop-down at the top of the page. There will be one line for each Period. A **Period** can be a Day, Month, or Year, and is defined in the **Show by** drop-down at the top of the page. The number of periods in the report depends on the date range designated at the top of the page. For each Period, you can see the total number of new customer accounts created. There will also be a row that totals the amounts of all Periods displayed in the report.

New Accounts	
Show Report for: All Websites	
From:	To:
04/10/2008	04/17/2008
04/11/2008	
04/12/2008	
04/13/2008	No records found for this period.
04/14/2008	No records found for this period.
04/15/2008	
04/16/2008	
04/17/2008	
Total	13

Customers by orders total

This report summarizes customer order information for Orders placed within the designated scope and period of time. The scope can be defined in the **Show Report for** drop-down at the top of the page. There will be one line for each **Period**. A Period can be a Day, Month, or Year, and is defined in the **Show by** drop-down at the top of the page. The number of periods in the report depends on the date range designated at the top of the page. Each Period will further be divided by the customer name. For each customer name, you can see the total number of Orders they placed, the average monetary amount of those Orders, and the total monetary amount of those Orders. The customers will be listed from highest to lowest by the total monetary amount of their Orders. There will also be a row that totals the amounts of all Periods displayed in the report.

Customers by number of orders

This report summarizes customer order information for Orders placed within the designated scope and period of time. The scope can be defined in the **Show Report for** drop-down at the top of the page. There will be one line for each **Period**. A Period can be a Day, Month, or Year, and is defined in the **Show by** drop-down at the top of the page. The number of periods in the report depends on the date range designated at the top of the page. Each

Period will further be divided by the customer name. For each customer name, you can see the total number of Orders they placed, the average monetary amount of those Orders, and the total monetary amount of those Orders. The customers will be listed from highest to lowest by the number of Orders placed. There will also be a row that totals the amounts of all Periods displayed in the report.

Review Reports

Customers Reviews

Lists all registered customers who have placed a review, and the number of total reviews that they have placed.

Products Reviews

Lists all products that have received a review, the number of total reviews received, the average rating, and the time and date of the most recent review. Clicking on a product will redirect to a list of each review placed for that product, including the Nickname, Summary, the content of the review, and the timestamp.

Tags Reports

Customer

Lists all customers who have submitted tags that currently have a Status of Approved, and the number of approved tags submitted by the customer. Clicking on a customer will redirect to a list of each approved tag, including the product name, tag name, the site(s) where the tag is visible, the site where the tag was submitted, and the timestamp when it was submitted.

Products

Lists all products for which tags have been submitted that currently have a Status of Approved, and the number of unique approved and total approved tags. Clicking on a product will redirect to a list of each unique approved tag, including the tag name, the number of times the tag has been applied to this product, and the site(s) where the tag is visible.

Popular

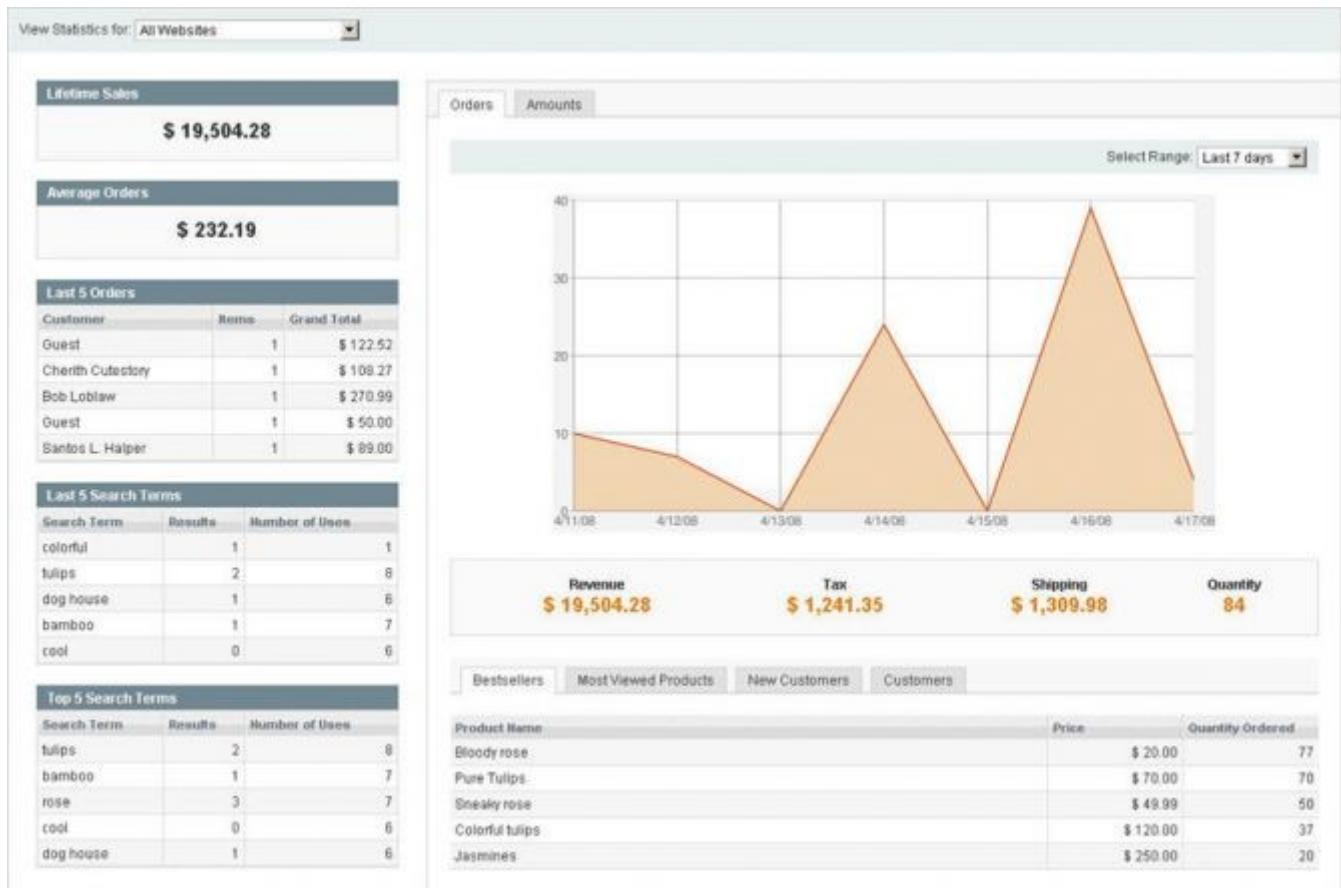
Lists all approved tags, and the number of times each tag has been used in your store. You can filter the tags by scope using the Show Report for drop-down at the top of the page.

Search Terms

Lists all existing search terms, including the number of results that displayed the last time the search term was used, and the number of times a search has been performed using that term. Both of those numbers, however, can be manipulated in the admin by navigating to Catalog > Search. For more information on Search terms, refer back to [Chapter 5](#).

Dashboard

While the Reports offer a variety of very detailed information about your site, you can get a quick summary of some of the most important information regarding your site with the Magento Admin Dashboard. By default, the Dashboard is first page you will view when logging in to the admin. In the top left corner is the **View Statistics for** drop-down, where, like most reports, you can change the scope of the data represented. In the left column is a summary of your Lifetime Sales (total monetary amount of all Orders) and Average Sales (total monetary amount divided by number of Orders), followed by links to the five most recently placed Orders, five Search Terms most recently used in the front-end, and five most popular Search Terms (based on number of uses). In the main section of the Dashboard, in the **Orders** tab, you can see a chart of Order frequency over a period of time, which you can change in the **Select Range** drop-down. If you select the **Amounts** tab, it will display the same information using the monetary amounts of the various Orders, rather than the number of Orders placed. At the bottom of this chart is the **Revenue** (total monetary amount of all Orders), **Tax** (total monetary amount of all Taxes paid), **Shipping** (total monetary amount of all Shipping paid), and **Quantity** (total number of all Orders placed). Underneath this section is four tabs, each containing links to various pages of the admin. The **Bestsellers** tab contains links to the five most purchased products. The **Most Viewed Products** tab contains links to the five most viewed products. The **New Customers** tab contains links to the five most recently created customer accounts. Finally, the **Customers** tab contains links to the five customers with the highest Total Order Amount.



Analytics

Magento offers integration of Google Analytics, which tracks information about your customers' experiences in your site. Once you create a Google Analytics account, navigate to System > Configuration, and click the Google API tab in the left column. In the Google Analytics box, select to **Enable** the feature, and then enter your **Account number**, which will be provided to you by Google Analytics. When you are finished, click **Save Config**, and the tracker code will be inserted into each page of your site.

The configuration form includes the following fields:

- Enable:** A dropdown menu set to "Yes".
- Account number:** An input field containing a placeholder URL.

Chapter 8: Managing Orders

Overview of Order Functionality

Creating Orders

With Magento, you have the ability to create an Order in the administrative interface, just like your customer does in the front-end. This is useful if you have a call center with operators taking orders directly for your customers, because the process is not much different from the one your customers experience. You have all the same abilities that your customers have when creating an Order in your webstore, including the ability to move products between the shopping cart, wishlist, last ordered items list, products in compare list, recently viewed products, and recently compared products.

Terminology

In addition to creating Orders, there are many features in the Magento admin for Order fulfillment and management, from creating Invoices, Shipments, and Credit Memos, to canceling and editing.

Sales Order

When an order is created, either from the front end, or through the admin, a Sales Order will be created to record this transaction. It will be accessible in the Orders list, by navigating to Sales > Orders in the admin. This is merely a temporary record, however, as the payment has not been processed, and the Order can be canceled.

Invoice

This is a record of the receipt of payment for an Order (in some cases, payment can actually be automatically received simultaneously during the creation of an Invoice), thereby essentially making it a permanent record of an Order. Multiple Invoices can be created per Order, containing as much or little of the purchased item quantity as you desire. However, each unit of each item can only be invoiced one time, so there is a finite limit to the number of Invoices that can be created. Because this is a permanent record of the Order, all quantity that has been Invoiced can no longer be canceled.

Shipment

This is a record of the items in an Order which have been shipped. Like an Invoice, Multiple Shipments can be created per Order, with a finite limit.

Credit Memo

This is a record of a refund. An item cannot be refunded until it is paid (as in an Invoice), so you will not be able to create a Credit Memo until an Invoice has been created. While it is a record of a refund, it is not a record of a return (the actual returning of funds to the customer). In some cases, a return can be given simultaneously during the creation of a Credit Memo (just as a payment is with an Invoice), but it is not a necessary part.

Managing and Editing Orders

This encompasses the remainder of options you have with regard to completed Orders. It includes putting an Order On Hold, Canceling the Order, Editing various aspects of the Order, or creating a new Order using the values from the original Order.

Creating Orders

Accessing the Order Page

There are two ways to access the Order Creation Page. You can navigate through the Orders page, or through the Manage Customers Page.

From the Orders page

1. In the Magento Admin Panel, navigate to Sales > Orders.
2. Click **Create New Order** in the upper right corner of the page.
3. Locate and select the customer for which you would like to create the order. Or, you can **Create New Customer** first.
4. Select the store in which you would like the order to be placed. When a customer creates an account in a website, that account will exist either globally, or only within the website in which it was created. This depends on what you select in the **Share Customer Accounts** drop-down in the Customer Configuration tab of System > Configuration. The Shopping Cart and Wishlist will be shared across the same scope as the account itself, so these will not change between different store views, however the rest of the Customer's Current Activities are not shared. Therefore, selecting a store determines not only to which product list you will have access when creating the order, but also to which of your Customer's Current Activities lists you will have access. If you choose a store within a website in which the customer does not have an account, an account will be created for the customer in that website upon completion of the order, with all the customer information duplicated.



You are now ready to create the order.

From the Customers page

1. Navigate to Customers > Manage Customers.
2. Locate and select the customer for which you would like to create the order, and click the **Edit** link in the **Action** column.
3. Click **Create Order**.
4. Select the store in which you would like the order to be placed.

You are now ready to create the order.

Creating the Order

From this one page, you have the ability to edit all aspects of the Order.

- Select the **Order Currency** from the drop-down list.
- Manage the **Customer's Current Activities** in the left column. Select the left checkbox for all products you would like to remove from the Shopping Cart, Wishlist, Last ordered items, Products in Compare List, Recently Compared Products, or Recently Viewed Products, and select the right checkbox for all products you would like to add to your order. Select both if you want to add it to the order and remove it from the list simultaneously, and then click **Update Changes**.

Customer's Current Activities

Update Changes

Shopping Cart (1)

Item	Qty	Price	Add	Remove
SLR Camera	1	\$ 91.45	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Tripod			<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Wishlist (1)

Item	Price	Add	Remove
Apple MacBook Pro MA464LL/A 15.4"	\$ 2,299.99	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Notebook PC		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Last ordered items (1)

Item	Add
Canon Digital Rebel XT 8MP Digital SLR Camera	<input type="checkbox"/>

Products in Compare List (2)

Item	Price	Add	Remove
Nokia 2610 Phone	\$ 149.99	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
BlackBerry 8100 Pearl	\$ 349.99	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Recently Compared Products (3)

Item	Price	Add
Barcelona Bamboo Platform Bed	\$ 2,299.00	<input type="checkbox"/>
Ottoman	\$ 299.99	<input type="checkbox"/>
Couch	\$ 599.99	<input type="checkbox"/>

Recently Viewed Products (1)

Item	Price	Add
The Get Up Kids: Band Camp Pullover Hoodie	\$ 30.00	<input type="checkbox"/>

Update Changes

- To add products that are not in the Customer's Current Activities section, click **Add Products** on the right of the page.

Please select products to add						
Page 1 of 1 pages View 20		per page Total 6 records found		<input type="button" value="Add Selected Product(s) to Order"/> <input type="button" value="Reset Filter"/> <input type="button" value="Search"/>		
ID	Product Name	SKU	Price	Qty To Add	From:	To:
	zolof				Any	
131	Zolof The Rock And Roll Destroyer: LOL Cat T-shirt	zol_g_lrg	\$ 13.50	<input type="checkbox"/>		
130	Zolof The Rock And Roll Destroyer: LOL Cat T-shirt	zol_r_lrg	\$ 13.50	<input type="checkbox"/>		
129	Zolof The Rock And Roll Destroyer: LOL Cat T-shirt	zol_g_med	\$ 13.50	<input type="checkbox"/>		
128	Zolof The Rock And Roll Destroyer: LOL Cat T-shirt	zol_r_med	\$ 13.50	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1	
127	Zolof The Rock And Roll Destroyer: LOL Cat T-shirt	zol_a_sm	\$ 13.50	<input type="checkbox"/>		

A list of all products in the store will display. Locate and select the checkbox for each product you wish to add, enter the desired quantity, and click **Add Selected Product(s) to Order**. Note: Configurable and Grouped Products will not display in this list. Because these are methods for displaying Simple Products, they are not necessary here.

- The Items Ordered section should now contain all the products you want in the order.

Items Ordered						
Product	Price	Qty	Subtotal	Discount	Row Subtotal	Action
Zolof The Rock And Roll Destroyer: LOL Cat T-shirt SKU: zol_r_med	\$ 13.50 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Custom Price 11.50	1	\$ 11.50	\$ 0.00 <input type="checkbox"/> Apply	\$ 11.50	
Coalesce: Functioning On Impatience T-shirt SKU: coal_md	\$ 15.00 <input type="checkbox"/> Custom Price	2	\$ 30.00	\$ 0.00 <input type="checkbox"/> Apply	\$ 30.00	
Total 2 product(s)			Subtotal: \$ 41.50	\$ 0.00	\$ 41.50	
<input type="button" value="Apply Coupon Code"/>		<input type="button" value="Apply"/>		<input type="button" value="Update Items and Qty's"/>		

You can edit the price and quantity, add a discount (and specify which products receive the discount using the checkbox), and add a gift message (if that feature is enabled). You can also remove the product by selecting the desired **Action** from the dropdown menu. You can simply **Remove** the product, remove and **Move to Shopping Cart**, or remove and **Move to Wishlist**. After you have selected all the edits you wish to make, click **Update Items and Qty's**.

- You can edit the customer's **Email** or **Customer Group** in the **Account Information** section.
- Select the **Billing** and **Shipping Address**, or, you can select **Add New Address** from the addresses dropdown list.
- Select the **Payment** and **Shipping Method**.
- In the **Order Total** section, you can **Apply Coupon Code** or **Add Order Comment**. The comment will appear in the completed order information page. Selecting the **Apply Comment to the Confirmation Email** checkbox will cause the comment to also appear at the bottom of the customer's confirmation email. However, the customer will only receive this email if you also select the **Send Order Confirmation Email** checkbox. You can configure the Order confirmation email by navigating to System > Configuration, and clicking the Sales Emails tab in the left column. In the **New Order Confirmation Email Sender** drop-down, select the address from which the order confirmation email will be sent. For more information on how to configure these email addresses, refer back to [Chapter 6](#). In the **New Order Confirmation Template** drop-down, select the template which the order confirmation email will use. For more information on how to

configure these templates, refer back to [Chapter 6](#). In the **Send Order Email Copy To** field, you can enter an email address which will receive a copy of the order confirmation email each time one is sent. Order Comments can also be added to completed Orders. If you choose to notify the customer when adding comments, the email notification configuration is located in the same Configuration page as above, in the Order Comments section. The status of the Order confirmation email will display in the completed Order (either sent or not sent), in the Order information box.

- When you have finished reviewing all of your selections, click **Submit Order**, and the order will be processed. If you wish, Magento will automatically notify you via RSS Feed of the creation of all new Orders, created in the admin or the front-end. In order to use this RSS feed, navigate to Sales > Orders, and click the **New Order RSS** link at the top of the page. You will be prompted to enter your User Name and Password. These are the same that you use to access the Magento admin panel. You will be redirected to the RSS page, where you can select which reader you would like to use for receiving this feed.

Sales Order Options

Whether an Order has been created by you in the admin, or by your customer in the front-end, you will have the ability to use Magento's order fulfillment features. This includes creating Invoices, Shipments, and Credit Memos for every Order.

Invoice Options

Create New

You can create an Invoice for an Order by clicking the Invoice button at the top of the Order page. For Orders with online payment methods, this button will not appear if you have chosen to **Authorize and Capture** in the **Payment Action** drop-down for that payment method in the Payment Method tab of System > Configuration. This will take you to the the New Invoice page. A new invoice page looks very similar to the completed Order page, with some additional fields that can be edited. When creating the first Invoice for an Order, the shipping amount for the entire order will be included, regardless of how many products are included in the first invoice. If the first Invoice did not include all of the items, all additional invoices thereafter will have no shipping charges attached (there will be no line for shipping in the order totals box). The tax, however, will only be added for the items that are included in the invoice.

- **Qty to Invoice** - For each line item, there will be a Qty to Invoice field, which will be prepopulated with the total quantity in the order that is still available to be invoiced. This is equal to the full quantity in the order minus the quantity already invoiced. This amount can be reduced, but since it equals the maximum quantity available for invoice, it cannot be increased. If the qty is changed, you must press **Update Qty's** to save

these changes, to recalculate the pricing information. You will not be able to change the quantities for Orders placed with online payment methods (except Google Checkout). For these types of Orders, only one Invoice can be created per Order, which will include the full quantity ordered.

Items to Invoice							
Product	Price	Qty	Qty to Invoice	Subtotal	Tax Amount	Discount Amount	Row Total
Zolo The Rock And Roll Destroyer: LOL Cat T-shirt SKU: zoi_l_med	\$ 11.50	Ordered: 1	1	\$ 11.50	\$ 0.95	\$ 0.00	\$ 12.45
Coalesce: Functioning On Impatience T-shirt SKU: coal_md	\$ 15.00	Ordered: 2	2	\$ 30.00	\$ 2.40	\$ 0.00	\$ 32.40
Update Qty's							

Placed with an offline payment method

- **Create Shipment** - There is a checkbox in the Shipping Information box called Create Shipment. If it is checked, a tracking number generator will appear (the same as exists in a New Shipment page), and you can attach one or more tracking numbers to the Shipment, which will simultaneously be created upon completion of the Invoice. The Shipment will include the same products as the Invoice.
- **Amount** - If the Order's payment is an online method (such as through Authorize.net) there will be a drop-down in the order totals box called Amount. There are three options available.
 - **Capture Online** - When the Invoice is submitted, the system will capture the payment through the third party payment gateway. You will have the ability to create a Credit Memo, or Void the Invoice.
 - **Capture Offline** - When the Invoice is submitted, the system will not capture the payment. It will be assumed that the payment is going to be captured directly through the gateway, and you will no longer have the option to capture this payment through Magento. You will have the ability to create a Credit Memo, but you will not have the option to Void the Invoice (even though the Order used an online payment, the Invoice is essentially an offline Invoice).
 - **Not Capture** - When the Invoice is submitted, the system will not capture the payment. However, it will be assumed that you will capture the payment through Magneto at a later date. Therefore, there will be a Capture button in the completed Invoice. Before capturing, you will be able to cancel the Invoice, and after capturing, you will be able to Credit Memo and Void the Invoice. *Note: Do not select Not Capture from the drop-down unless you are certain that you are going to capture the payment through Magento at a later date. You will not be able to create a Credit Memo until the payment has been captured using the Capture button.*

Invoice Totals

Subtotal	\$ 41.50
Tax	\$ 3.43
Shipping & Handling	\$ 6.19
Grand Total	\$ 51.12

Amount

Submit Invoice

Placed with an online payment method

- Just as with an Order, you will have the ability to notify the customer of the creation of an Invoice (by checking the **Email Copy of Invoice** checkbox) and add comments to the Invoice (in the **Invoice Comments** field). If you have done both, you can choose to include the Invoice Comments in the Invoice notification email by checking the **Append Comments** checkbox. You can configure the Invoice email by navigating to System > Configuration, and clicking the Sales Emails tab in the left column. In the **Invoice Email Sender** drop-down, select the address from which the Invoice email will be sent. For more information on how to configure these email addresses, refer back to [Chapter 6](#). In the **Invoice Email Template** drop-down, select the template which the Invoice email will use. For more information on how to configure these templates, refer back to [Chapter 6](#). In the **Send Invoice Email Copy To** field, you can enter an email address which will receive a copy of the Invoice email each time one is sent. The status of the Invoice email will display in the completed Invoice (either sent or not sent), next to the Invoice number.
- When finished, press the **Submit Invoice** button at the bottom of the page.

Completed Invoices

When an Invoice is completed, it can be accessed in two locations. In an Order page, there is an Invoice tab, which contains a list of all Invoices associated to that Order. If you navigate to Sales > Invoices, you can view a list of all Invoices associated to all Orders. There are several features available for completed Invoices.

- Credit Memo** - Completed Invoices created from Orders will have a Credit Memo button at the top of the page, which will take you to the New Credit Memo page. This is almost identical to creating a Credit Memo from the Order page (more about this below), except that the Qty to Refund will be prepopulated with the total available quantity to refund from that particular Invoice, rather than the from entire Order. This amount can be increased up to the total available amount from the Order.

- **Cancel** - If the Order's payment is an online method, and you selected Not Capture from the Amount dropdown when creating the Invoice, you will have the option to Cancel the Invoice. There will be a record of the canceled Invoice, but the Invoiced quantity will be able to be re-Invoiced at any time.
- **Capture** - If the Order's payment is an online method, and you selected Not Capture from the Amount dropdown when creating the Invoice, you will have the option to capture the payment anytime by clicking the Capture button. Once the payment has been captured, the button will no longer appear.
- **Void** - If the Order's payment is an online method, and you have captured the payment through Magento (either automatically during Order creation, during Invoice creation, or after the Invoice has been created), the Void button will appear. Pressing this will void the payment through the third party payment gateway. Unlike Cancel, the Invoiced quantity will no longer be able to be Invoiced again.
- **Print** - You have the option to print a copy of the Invoice using the Print button. This will open a .pdf file containing all the Invoice information. At the top of the Invoice slip will display a custom image and address. These can be configured by navigating to System > Configuration, clicking the Sales tab in the left column, and opening the Invoice and Packing Slip Design section. Invoices, packing slips, and Credit Memos will use the same image and address. The image will automatically resize to fit the dimensions 200x50.
- **Comments** - Invoice Comments can also be added to completed Invoices. If you choose to notify the customer when adding comments, the email notification configuration is located in the same Configuration page as above, in the Invoice Comments section.

Shipment Options

Create New

You can create a Shipment for an Order by clicking the Shipment button at the top of the Order page. This will take you to the the New Shipment page. A New Shipment page looks very similar to the completed Order page, although it does not include any price information, and it contains some additional fields that can be edited.

- **Qty to Ship** - Similar to an Invoice, each line item will have a Qty to Ship field, which will be prepopulated with the total quantity in the order that is still available to be shipped. This is equal to the full quantity in the order minus the quantity already shipped. This amount can be reduced, but since it equals the maximum quantity available for shipment, it cannot be increased. If the quantity is changed, however, you do not need to press Update Qty's to save these changes (no such button exists on this page), as there is pricing information that needs to be recalculated.

- **Add Tracking Number**

Shipping Information

DHL - Ground (Total Shipping Charges \$ 6.19)			
Carrier	Title	Number	Action
Federal Express	Federal Express	#####	Delete
Add Tracking Number			

In the Shipping Information box is the tracking number generator. A new tracking number will be added each time the button is pressed, allowing you to add multiple tracking numbers. Each tracking number will have a section to enter the carrier (selected from a dropdown menu), title, and number. There will also be a delete button next to each tracking number in order to remove it from the Shipment.

- Just as with an Order, you will have the ability to notify the customer of the creation of a Shipment (by checking the **Email Copy of Shipment** checkbox) and add comments to the Shipment (in the **Shipment Comments** field). If you have done both, you can choose to include the Shipment Comments in the Shipment notification email by checking the **Append Comments** checkbox. You can configure the Shipment email by navigating to System > Configuration, and clicking the Sales Emails tab in the left column. In the **Shipment Email Sender** drop-down, select the address from which the Shipment email will be sent. For more information on how to configure these email addresses, refer back to [Chapter 6](#). In the **Shipment Email Template** drop-down, select the template which the Shipment email will use. For more information on how to configure these templates, refer back to [Chapter 6](#). In the **Send Invoice Email Copy To** field, you can enter an email address which will receive a copy of the Shipment email each time one is sent. The status of the Shipment email will display in the completed Shipment (either sent or not sent), next to the Shipment number.
- When finished, press the **Submit Shipment** button at the top of the page.

Completed Shipments

When a Shipment is completed, it can be accessed in two locations. In an Order page, there is a Shipment tab, which contains a list of all Shipments associated to that Order. If you navigate to Sales > Shipments, you can view a list of all Shipments associated to all Orders. There are several features available for completed Shipments.

- **Send Tracking Information** - Completed Shipments will have a Send Tracking Information button at the top of the page. If you add or edit Tracking Information to the Shipment, you can click this button in order to notify the customer of the changes. This will send an email in the format of the Shipment Email Template.
- **Print** - You have the option to print a packing slip for this Shipment using the Print button. This will open a .pdf file containing all the Shipment information. At the top of the packing slip will display a custom image and address. These can be configured by navigating to System > Configuration, clicking the Sales tab in the left

- column, and opening the Invoice and Packing Slip Design section. Invoices, packing slips, and Credit Memos will use the same image and address. The image will automatically resize to fit the dimensions 200×50.
- Comments - Shipment Comments can also be added to completed Shipments. If you choose to notify the customer when adding comments, the email notification configuration is located in the same Configuration page as above, in the Shipment Comments section.

Credit Memo Options

Create New

Once you have created at least one Invoice, you can create a Credit Memo for an order by clicking the Credit Memo button at the top of the Order page. The button will only appear if at least one Invoice has been created. This will take you to the the New Credit Memo page. A New Credit Memo page looks very similar to the completed Order page, with some additional fields that can be edited.

- Qty to Refund** - Similar to an Invoice, each line item will have a Qty to Refund field, which will be prepopulated with the total quantity in the order that is still available to be refunded. This is equal to the full quantity that has been invoiced minus the the quantity already refunded. If the Order's Payment Method is an offline method, or Google Checkout, this amount can be reduced, but since it equals the maximum quantity available for refund, it cannot be increased. If the Order's Payment Method is an online method other than Google Checkout, this field will not be editable, because Magento currently does not support multiple captures for these Payment Methods out-of-the-box (however, this can be customized). If the qty is changed, you must press **Update Qty's** to save these changes, to recalculate the pricing information. There is also a **Return to Stock** checkbox. This will add the refunded quantity back to the inventory quantity for each item. This is useful if your customer has returned the product to you, and you want to resell it. If the product is damaged or otherwise unable to be resold, you may want to leave this checkbox unchecked. Note: *This checkbox will only appear if you have enabled your inventory to Decrease Stock When Order is Placed in the Inventory tab of System > Configuration. You cannot return quantity to stock if it had never been subtracted from stock.*

Items to Refund								
Product	Price	Qty	Return to Stock	Qty to Refund	Subtotal	Tax Amount	Discount Amount	Row Total
Zo!f The Rock And Roll Destroyer: LÖL Cat T-shirt SKU: zoi_r_med	\$ 11.50	Ordered: 1 Invoiced: 1 Shipped: 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1	\$ 11.50	\$ 0.95	\$ 0.00	\$ 12.45
Coalesce: Functioning On Impatience T-shirt SKU: coal_md	\$ 15.00	Ordered: 2 Invoiced: 2 Shipped: 2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2	\$ 30.00	\$ 2.48	\$ 0.00	\$ 32.48
Update Qty's								

Placed with an offline payment method

- Refund Shipping** - In the order totals box is the Refund Shipping field. The value entered here will be refunded from the shipping. It will be prepopulated with total shipping amount in the order that is still available

to be refunded. This is equal to the full **Shipping Amount** from the order minus the **Shipping Refund**, which is the amount that has already been refunded. Like the quantity, it can be reduced, but not increased.

- **Adjustment Refund** - Below Refund Shipping is the Adjustment Refund field. The value entered here will add to the total amount refunded as an additional refund, so it will not apply to any particular aspect of the order (shipping, items, or tax). However, the amount entered here cannot raise the **Total Refund** higher than the **Paid Amount**.
- **Adjustment Fee** - Below Adjustment Refund is the Adjustment Fee field. The value entered here will subtract from the total amount refunded, but will not be subtracted from any particular aspect of the order (shipping, items, or tax).

Refund Totals

Subtotal	\$ 41.50
Tax	\$ 3.43
Refund Shipping	6.19
Adjustment Refund	0
Adjustment Fee	10
Total Refund	\$ 44.93

Append Comments

Email Copy of Credit Memo

Refund 

- Just as with an Order, you will have the ability to notify the customer of the creation of a Credit Memo (by checking the **Email Copy of Credit Memo** checkbox) and add comments to the Credit Memo (in the **Credit Memo Comments** field). If you have done both, you can choose to include the Credit Memo Comments in the Credit Memo notification email by checking the **Append Comments** checkbox. You can configure the Credit Memo email by navigating to System > Configuration, and clicking the Sales Emails tab in the left column. In the **Credit Memo Email Sender** drop-down, select the address from which the Credit Memo email will be sent. For more information on how to configure these email addresses, refer back to [Chapter 6](#). In the **Credit Memo Email Template** drop-down, select the template which the Credit Memo email will use. For more information on how to configure these templates, refer back to [Chapter 6](#). In the **Send Invoice Email Copy To** field, you can enter an email address which will receive a copy of the Credit Memo email each time one is sent. The status of the Credit Memo email will display in the completed Credit Memo (either sent or not sent), next to the Credit Memo number.
- When finished, press the **Refund** button at the bottom of the page. This will complete the offline refund. Currently, there is one instance of online Credit Memos available. If the Order's Payment Method is Google Checkout, if you clicked the Credit Memo button in the Invoice (rather than in the Order), and if the Invoice

has been captured, there will be two Refund buttons. One will be offline and one will be online. Similar to capturing an Invoice, this will "capture" the refund.

- **Refund Offline** - The system assumes that the refund will be captured directly through Google Checkout without involving Magento.
- **Refund** - The system will capture the refund through Google Checkout. There is more information about Magento integration with Google Checkout, including integration of Invoices, Shipments, and Credit Memos, in [Chapter 4: Get Ready for Selling](#).

Refund Totals

Subtotal	\$ 41.50
Tax	\$ 3.43
Refund Shipping	6.19
Adjustment Refund	0
Adjustment Fee	10
Total Refund	\$ 44.93

Append Comments

Email Copy of Credit Memo

Refund Offline **Refund**

Placed with Google Checkout

Completed Credit Memos

When a Credit Memo is completed, it can be accessed in two locations. In an Order page, there is a Credit Memo tab, which contains a list of all Credit Memos associated to that Order. If you navigate to Sales > Credit Memos, you can view a list of all Credit Memos associated to all Orders. There are several features available for completed Credit Memos.

- **Print** - You have the option to print a copy of this Credit Memo using the Print button. This will open a .pdf file containing all the Credit Memo information. At the top of the Credit Memo slip will display a custom image and address. These can be configured by navigating to System > Configuration, clicking the Sales tab in the left column, and opening the Invoice and Packing Slip Design section. Invoices, packing slips, and Credit Memos will use the same image and address. The image will automatically resize to fit the dimensions 200×50.
- Credit Memo Comments can also be added to completed Credit Memos. If you choose to notify the customer when adding comments, the email notification configuration is located in the same Configuration page as above, in the Credit Memo Comments section.

Managing and Editing Orders

In addition to the order fulfillment process of creating Invoices, Shipments, and Credit Memos, there are several other features available for completed orders.

Hold

Changes the order status to On Hold. No changes can be made to the order until it is released from Hold, which can be done by pressing the **Unhold** button.

Cancel

Cancels all items that have not been invoiced and/or shipped. If some of the quantity of a line item has already been invoiced and/or shipped, only the remaining quantity will be canceled, and this amount will display in the quantity column as **Qty Canceled**. The item status will remain either shipped or invoiced. If none of the quantity for the line item has been invoiced and/or shipped, all of the quantity will be canceled, and the item status will become canceled. Any time an order is canceled, a notification should automatically be sent to the customer in the format of the order confirmation email. It should also display the status of each line item and the qty ordered, invoiced, shipped, refunded, and canceled.

Edit

You can edit an Order by pressing the Edit button. This will take you to the Edit Order page, which contains all the same fields as an order being created in the admin (including access to the customer's current activities in the left column), and many of them will be prepopulated with the values from the original order, including order currency, items ordered, customer email, customer group, billing and shipping addresses (whether or not the address is saved in the customer's address book), and payment method. Shipping method, credit card number and card verification number, if applicable, will not prepopulate. The prepopulated products will only include those from the original order which have not been invoiced and/or shipped. Therefore, if the entire quantity of the order has been invoiced and shipped, you cannot make an Edit. At the bottom of the page, you will have the option to add comments and notify the customer. If the customer is notified, they will receive an email in the format of the order confirmation email. If the customer used guest checkout or an alternative checkout (such as Google Checkout) and does not have an account, there will not be a current activities column. When all edits are complete, press the **Submit Order** button. This will simultaneously create a new order and cancel the previous order. The new order will have all of the same information as the original order (updated, of course) with a couple of additions. The Order Number will now display the original order number, a dash, and the running number for the order version. For example, if the original order number was Order # 100000005, the edited order number would be Order #

100000005-1. The next edit would be Order # 100000005-2, and so on. Additionally, in the order information box, there will be a “Link to the previous order”.

Order # 100000015-1 (Order confirmation email sent)	
Order Date	Apr 21, 2008 4:22:07 PM
Order Status	Processing
Purchased From	Main Website Main Store English
Link to the previous order	100000015

In the previous order, there will now be a “Link to the new order”.

Order # 100000015 (Order confirmation email sent)	
Order Date	Apr 21, 2008 4:03:10 PM
Order Status	Complete
Purchased From	Main Website Main Store English
Link to the new order	100000015-1

If an edit is made to Order # 100000005-1, that order will have links to the previous Order # 100000005 and the new Order # 100000005-2.

Reorder

At any stage of the order, whether it has been fully invoiced and shipped, fully refunded, or even canceled, you can make a Reorder by pressing the Reorder button (the button will only appear if you have enabled Reorders, which can be done by navigating to System > Configuration, clicking the Sales tab, and selecting Yes from the **Allow Reorder** drop-down). This will take you to the New Order page, the same page that you reach when creating an order in the admin. However, it is similar to an Edit in the sense that all the fields will be prepopulated with much of the information from the previous order. Only credit card number and card verification number will not autopopulate. It is also like an Edit because the customer's current activities column may not appear if the customer does not have an account. Unlike an Edit, however, this is treated as a completely new order. It will receive its own Order #, and there will be no links to the previous order from the newly created order, nor to the newly created order from the previous order.

Batch Updates to Orders

Similar to Batch Updates for products, this feature saves you time by allowing you to change certain settings for multiple Orders at the same time. Batch Updates are made from the Orders list, which can be accessed by navigating to Sales > Orders. Select the Orders to which you would like to make updates. At the top of the Orders list, you have the option to **Select All Orders** or **Select Visible Orders** (Orders currently displaying on the page). Or, you can simply check the checkboxes of each Order to which you wish to make updates individually. You can see the number of **items selected** at the top of the Orders list, and it will update each time a checkbox is checked or unchecked. When you have all the desired Orders selected, chose your preferred Action from the drop-down menu, also at the top of the customers list.

Actions										Submit
Order #	Purchased from (store)	Purchased On	Bill to Name	Ship to Name	G.T. (Base)	G.T. (P)	Cancel	Hold	Unhold	Action
Any		From: <input type="text"/>	To: <input type="text"/>				From: <input type="text"/>	To: <input type="text"/>		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 100000017	Main Website Main Store	Apr 21, 2008 4:29:01 PM	Professor Peter Van Nostrand	Professor Peter Van Nostrand	\$ 560.00					
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 100000015-1	Main Website Main Store	Apr 21, 2008 4:22:07 PM	Professor Peter Van Nostrand	Professor Peter Van Nostrand	\$ 23.50	\$ 23.50				Processing
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 100000015	Main Website Main Store	Apr 21, 2008 4:03:10 PM	Professor Peter Van Nostrand	Professor Peter Van Nostrand	\$ 73.50	\$ 73.50				Complete

- **Cancel** - This will cancel the selected Orders when you press **Submit**. If a selected Order can no longer be canceled, this Order will not be affected by this Action.
- **Hold** - When you press Submit, this will set the Order status of all selected Orders to On Hold. If a selected Order is already On Hold, this Order will not be affected by this Action.
- **Unhold** - When you press Submit, this will set the Order status of all selected Orders back to the status they held prior to being put On Hold. If a selected Order is not currently On Hold, this Order will not be affected by this action.
- **Print Invoices** - When you press Submit, this will open a .pdf file containing all the Invoice information for all Invoices associated to all selected Orders. You can also make batch prints of Invoices by navigating to Sales > Invoices.
- **Print Packingslips** - When you press Submit, this will open a .pdf file containing all the Shipment information for all Shipments associated to all selected Orders. You can also make batch prints of packing slips by navigating to Sales > Shipments.
- **Print Credit Memos** - When you press Submit, this will open a .pdf file containing all the Credit Memo information for all Credit Memos associated to all selected Orders. You can also make batch prints of Credit Memos by navigating to Sales > Credit Memos.
- **Print All** - When you press Submit, this will open a .pdf file containing all the Invoice, Shipment, and Credit Memo information for all Invoices, Shipments, and Credit Memos (respectively) associated to all selected Orders.

Chapter 9: User-Generated Content

Ratings and Reviews

Managing Ratings

Magento's Product Rating system allows you to customize rating categories by which your customers can rate products when they create product reviews.

Great For:

- Adding social shopping elements to your store
- Increasing customer trust in your product
- Increasing Conversions

By default, Magento comes with three pre-existing ratings: Price, Quality, and Value. These can be edited by navigating to Catalog > Reviews and Ratings > Manage Ratings, and clicking one of these Ratings. To create a new Rating, click **Add New Rating** in the top right of the page.

Rating Title

- **Default Value** - Enter the name of the Rating as it will appear in the admin.
- **Store Views** - For each Store View, you can enter a unique name for this Rating as it will appear on the front-end. If you leave the field blank for any Store View, the Default Value will display in the front-end of that Store View.

Rating Visibility

- **Visible In** - Select the Store Views in which this Rating will be available for your customers to rate products when they create product reviews.

When you are finished, click Save Rating. Now when your customers add a Review, they will see a table with Rating options, and the ability to give 1-5 stars for each Rating option.

Write Your Own Review

You're reviewing: Barcelona Bamboo Platform Bed

How do you rate this product?*

	1 star	2 stars	3 stars	4 stars	5 stars
Quality	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
Price	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Value	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

When the review is submitted, and approved by you, the Rating is displayed above the review comments.

Excellent! Review by Dan

Quality 

Price 

Value 

Excellent wood bed and drawer set. Excellent value, fast shipping and a quality product. Awesome! (Posted on 4/14/08)

Additionally, all Ratings will be averaged, and display on all product listing pages (category pages, search results, etc.) and the product info page, with the number of total approved reviews to the right (in some places this number displays in parentheses).



Barcelona Bamboo Platform Bed

 (2)

\$ 99.00

[Add to Cart](#)

[Add to Wishlist](#)

[Add to Compare](#)

Managing Reviews

Magento's Reviews system allows you to monitor, edit, and delete any product reviews and ratings that have been added to a product. Reviews can be left by any user whether or not they're logged in, however, reviews will not display in the front-end for other customers to see until you approve them in the admin. If you wish to, you can also add reviews to products from the admin.

Great For:

- Getting Customer Input
- Adding Social Shopping Elements
- Increasing Conversions

Adding a new review from the admin

To add a new review from the admin, navigate to Catalog > Reviews and Ratings > Customer Reviews > All Reviews and click **Add New Review** in the top right of the page. You will be redirected to a list of all existing products in your site. Select the product for which you wish to add the review.

- **Product** - You can see the name of the product to which you just selected to add a review. Clicking on this product name will direct you to that product's page in the admin.
- **Product Rating** - This will state "Rating isn't Available" until you select at least one Store View in which this rating will be visible, from the Visible In drop-down below. Once this is done, the same Rating table that is available to your customers in the selected Store View will appear, in which you can select 1-5 stars for each Rating option.
- **Status** - Select whether the Review will be **Approved**, **Pending**, or **Not Approved**. For it to display in the front-end, it must be Approved.
- **Visible In** - Select the Store Views in which this rating will display for the designated product.
- **Nickname** - Enter the name of the reviewer as it will appear in the front-end.
- **Summary of Review** - Enter the title of the review as it will appear in the front-end.
- **Review** - Enter the contents of the review as they will appear in the front-end.

When you are finish, click **Save Review**. If you set the Status to Approved, this review will now appear in the front-end.

Editing and approving pending reviews

The process by which customers create reviews in the admin is very similar to the process by which they are created in the front-end. Customers, however, cannot edit the Status or Visible In fields. When a customer first submits a review, by default the Status will be Pending. It will therefore list in the Pending Reviews queue. To

access this queue, navigate to Catalog > Reviews and Ratings > Customer Reviews > Pending Reviews. You can make changes to any review by clicking **Edit** in the **Action** column. Select Approved to remove this review from the Pending Reviews queue and display it in the front-end. Select Not Approved to remove this review from the Pending Reviews queue without displaying it in the front-end. The Visible In field will automatically select the Store View in which this review was submitted, however you can choose to change, add, or remove Store Views from this list. You can also edit any of the content of the review. You may notice there is a field here that was not present when creating a review from the admin: **Posted by**. This field describes whether the reviewer was logged in (**Customer**) or not (**Guest**) when they submitted the review. It will say **Administrator** for reviews that you created in the admin. When you are finished, click Save Review.

Review Details					
Product	<u>Barcelona Bamboo Platform Bed</u>				
Posted By	Guest				
Summary Rating					
Detailed Rating *	<input type="radio"/> 1 star	<input type="radio"/> 2 stars	<input type="radio"/> 3 stars	<input type="radio"/> 4 stars	<input checked="" type="radio"/> 5 stars
Quality	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
Price	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Value	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Status *	<input type="button" value="Approved"/>				
Visible Ins *	Main Website Store A changed English Polish Portuguese Store B Burmese jeff main store Chinese				
Nickname *	Dan				
Summary of review *	Excellent!				
Review *	Excellent wood bed and drawer set. Excellent value, fast shipping and a quality product. Awesome!				

If you do not need to change the contents of any reviews, you can make batch updates to pending reviews in order to save time. In the Pending Reviews queue, select the reviews to which you would like to make updates. At the top of the reviews list, you have the option to **Select All** reviews or **Select Visible** reviews (reviews currently displaying on the page). Or, you can simply check the checkboxes of each review to which you wish to make updates individually. You can see the number of **items selected** at the top of the reviews list, and it will update each time a checkbox is checked or unchecked. When you have all the desired reviews selected, chose your preferred Action from the drop-down menu, also at the top of the reviews list.

- **Delete** - This will delete the selected reviews from your site when you press **Submit**.
- **Update Status** - Selecting this will produce a **Status** drop-down menu to the right, where you can choose to set the Status of all selected reviews to Approved, Pending, or Not Approved. The status will change when you press Submit.
- **Set Visible In** - Selecting this will produce and **Store(s)** multiple select menu to the right, where you can choose the Store Views in which the selected reviews will display. The “visibility” will change when you press Submit.

When a review is Approved or Not Approved, it can still be edited. Simply navigate to Catalog > Reviews and Ratings > Customer Reviews > All Reviews, locate the desired review, and click Edit in the Action column. You can make the same edits here that you can in the Pending Reviews queue. If you wish, you can also subscribe to an RSS Feed of all newly created Reviews. In both the Pending Reviews page, and All Reviews page, there is a link called **Pending Reviews RSS**. When you click on this link, you will be prompted to enter your User Name and Password. These are the same that you use to access the Magento admin panel. You will be redirected to the RSS page, where you can select which reader you would like to use for receiving this feed.

Tags

Tags are essentially one-word descriptors that act as keywords. They can be assigned to products by registered customers who are currently logged in. Tags help your customers organize and remember the products that they have seen, offer quick navigation options in your store, and aid in the process of search engine optimization. Each product has an **Add Your Tags** field at the bottom of the page on the front-end.

The screenshot shows a user interface for adding product tags. At the top, the title "Product Tags" is displayed in orange. Below it, the instruction "Add Your Tags:" is shown in bold black text. To the left of the input field is a small icon of a notepad with a pencil. The input field contains the text "comfy modern stylish". To the right of the input field is a blue rectangular button with the white text "Add Tags". Below the input field, a note in smaller text reads "Use spaces to separate tags. Use single quotes ('') for phrases."

When a customer enters a word and clicks **Add Tags**, that tag will be sent to the Pending Tags queue (if they are not logged in, they will first be prompted to do so, or create an account, before the tag will be submitted to the queue). If they add multiple words, each word will be separated as a separate entry in the queue, unless the separate words are surrounded by single quotes, in which case they will be grouped as one tag. If you wish, you can allow customers to be alerted of new tags via RSS feeds. There is more information about customer RSS Feeds in [Chapter 5: Promotions, Marketing, and Content Pages](#). To access the Pending Tags queue, navigate to Catalog > Tags > Pending Tags. You can make changes to any Tag by selecting **Edit Tag** in the **Action** column. Select Approved to remove this Tag from the Pending Tag queue and display it in the front-end. Select Disabled

to remove this Tag from the Pending Tags queue without displaying it in the front-end. You can also edit the name of the Tag. When you are finished, click **Save Tag**. If you do not need to change the name of any Tags, you can make batch updates to pending Tags in order to save time. In the Pending Tags queue, select the Tags to which you would like to make updates. At the top of the Tags list, you have the option to **Select All Tags** or **Select Visible Tags** (Tags currently displaying on the page). Or, you can simply check the checkboxes of each Tags to which you wish to make updates individually. You can see the number of **items selected** at the top of the Tags list, and it will update each time a checkbox is checked or unchecked. When you have all the desired Tags selected, chose your preferred Action from the drop-down menu, also at the top of the Tags list.

- **Delete** - This will delete the selected Tags from your site when you press **Submit**.
- **Change Status** - Selecting this will produce a **Status** drop-down menu to the right, where you can choose to set the Status of all selected Tags to Approved, Pending, or Disabled. The status will change when you press Submit.

Pending Tags							
Page 1 of 1 pages View 20 per page Total 3 records found Reset Filter Search							
Select All Unselect All Select Visible Unselect Visible 3 items selected				Actions Change status		Status Pending	
Tag	Users	Products	Customers	Popularity	Visible In	Disabled	Pending
Any	From: <input type="text"/> To: <input type="text"/>	1 All Store Views Main Website Store A changed English	Pending	Approved			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> comfy		1	1	1	1 All Store Views Main Website Store A changed English	Pending	Approved
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> modern		1	1	1	1 All Store Views Main Website Store A changed English	Pending	Approved
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> stylish		1	1	1	1 All Store Views Main Website Store A changed English	Pending	Approved

From the Pending Tags queue you have the option to view the list of all products to which this Tag has been applied, by locating the desired Tag and selecting **View Products** in the Action column. For each product you can see how many times this tag was applied to it. Clicking a product will redirect you to that product's page in the admin. From the Pending Tags queue you also have the option to view the list of all customers who have applied this Tag to a product, by locating the desired Tag and selecting **View Customers** in the Action column. For each customer you can see the Store View(s) in which they used this Tag, the product(s) to which they applied this Tag, and the product SKU. Clicking a customer will redirect you to that customer's account page in the admin.

Once a Tag has been approved, it will display on the front-end for all products to which it has been applied. It no longer needs to be approved each time it is added to a new product, or added by a different customer. It will automatically display on the front-end, above the Add Your Tags field, with the number of times this Tag has been applied to this product in parentheses.

Product Tags

Other people marked this product with these tags:

[comfy](#) (1) | [modern](#) (1) | [stylish](#) (1)

Add Your Tags:



Add Tags

Use spaces to separate tags. Use single quotes ('') for phrases.

Clicking on the Tag will produce a list of all products that have the same Tag applied to them. Additionally, a Popular Tags block will appear in the left column of your site, listing the most commonly used approved Tags in a cloud. Clicking a Tag here will also produce a list of all products that have the same Tag applied to them.

POPULAR TAGS

[beautiful](#) [classic](#) [comfy](#)
[dependable](#) [modern](#) [sleek](#)
[state-of-the-art](#) [sturdy](#) [stylish](#)
[user friendly](#)

[View All Tags](#)

Although Approved and Disabled Tags no longer appear in the Pending Tags queue, they can still be edited. Simply navigate to Catalog > Tags > All Tags. You can make the same individual or batch updates that are possible in the Pending Tags queue.

Email to a Friend Options

Magento's Email to a Friend option allows your customers to help you in promoting your site through word of mouth. They can customize a message that will be sent in the email, along with a link to the product from which they chose to "Email to a Friend", making it easier for people to find out more information about your products. This is similar to the Share Wishlist feature available in the Wishlist (refer back to [Chapter 5](#)). To configure your Email to a Friend settings, navigate to System > Configuration, and select the Email to a Friend tab in the left column.

- **Enabled** - Select Yes to Enable the Email to a Friend feature. This will place the Email to a Friend link on every product page, below the product name, where your customers can click in order to use this feature.
- **Select email template** - Designate the template of the Email to a Friend emails. For more information on how to configure these templates, refer back to [Chapter 6](#).

- **Allow for Guests** - Designate whether you would like guests to be able to use this feature. If you select No, the Email to a Friend links will only appear for logged in customers.
- **Max Recipients** - Define the maximum number of different email addresses your customers can enter each time they send an email. They can add multiple address by clicking the Add Recipient button on the front-end. When they have reached this limit, the button will no longer appear, and they will be notified that they have reached the limit for addresses allowed. This is to prevent spamming.
- **Max Products Sent in 1 Hour** - Define the maximum number of different products for which your customers can send an email within a 1 hour period of time. This limitation will be explained to your customers at the top of the Email to a Friend page. When they have reached the limit, they will no longer be able to send emails, until the 1 hour period has passed. This is to prevent spamming.
- **Limit Sending By** - This works in conjunction with the two anti-spamming features above. Designate how Magento will define a user, so that the anti-spamming features can be enforced. You can choose to identify a user by **IP Address**, or by browser **Cookies**. As indicated in the drop-down, however, Cookies are the less secure method, because the user can simply delete them and avoid the email limitations.

Email templates

Enabled	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>
Select email template	<input type="text" value="Send product to a friend"/>
Allow for Guests	<input type="text" value="No"/>
Max Recipients	<input type="text" value="5"/>
Max Products Sent in 1 Hour	<input type="text" value="5"/>
Limit Sending By	<input type="text" value="IP Address"/>